

Inside the PGPsdk

Version 1.1

October 30, 1997

Copyright © 1997 Pretty Good Privacy, Inc. All rights reserved.
9-97. Printed in the United States of America.
PGPsdk, Version 1.1

Record the serial number from your **License Agreement** in the space provided below:

| |
|--|
| |
|--|

Copyright © 1990-1997 by Pretty Good Privacy, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

PGP, Pretty Good, and Pretty Good Privacy are registered trademarks of Pretty Good Privacy, Inc. All other trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Portions of this software may use public key algorithms described in U.S. Patent numbers 4,200,770, 4,218,582, 4,405,829, and 4,424,414, licensed exclusively by Public Key Partners; the IDEA™ cryptographic cipher described in U.S. patent number 5,214,703, licensed from Ascom Tech AG; and the Northern Telecom Ltd., CAST Encryption Algorithm, licensed from Northern Telecom, Ltd. IDEA is a trademark of Ascom Tech AG. The compression code in PGP is by Mark Adler and Jean-loup Gailly, used with permission from the free Info-ZIP implementation. LDAP software provided courtesy University of Michigan at Ann Arbor, Copyright © 1992-1996 Regents of the University of Michigan. All rights reserved. Pretty Good Privacy, Inc. may have patents and/or pending patent applications covering subject matter in this software or its documentation; the furnishing of this software or documentation does not give you any license to these patents.

The software provided with this documentation is licensed to you for your individual use under the terms of the End User License Agreement and Limited Warranty provided with the software. The information in this document is subject to change without notice. Pretty Good Privacy, Inc. does not warrant that the information meets your requirements or that the information is free of errors. The information may include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes may be made to the information and incorporated in new editions of this document, if and when made available by Pretty Good Privacy, Inc.

Export of this software and documentation may be subject to compliance with the rules and regulations promulgated from time to time by the Bureau of Export Administration, United States Department of Commerce, which restrict the export and re-export of certain products and technical data.

| | | |
|---------------------------|----------------|-------|
| Pretty Good Privacy, Inc. | (650) 631-1747 | voice |
| 2121 South El Camino Real | (650) 572-1932 | fax |
| Suite 902 | | |
| San Mateo, CA 94403 | | |

Document last revised: **1997.12.02**

LIMITED WARRANTY

Limited Warranty. Pretty Good Privacy, Inc. ("PGP") warrants that the Software Product will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of sixty (60) days from the date of original purchase. To the extent allowed by applicable law, implied warranties on the Software Product, if any, are limited to such sixty (60) day period. Some jurisdictions do not allow limitations on duration of an implied warranty, so the above limitation may not apply to you.

Customer Remedies. PGP's and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at PGP's option, either (a) return of the purchase price paid for the license, if any or (b) repair or replacement of the Software Product that does not meet PGP's limited warranty and which is returned at your expense to PGP with a copy of your receipt. This limited warranty is void if failure of the Software Product has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any repaired or replacement Software Product will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Outside the United States, neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by PGP are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source and may not be available from PGP to the extent they subject to restrictions under U.S. export control laws and regulations.

NO OTHER WARRANTIES. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTIES SET FORTH HEREIN, THE SOFTWARE AND DOCUMENTATION ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND PGP AND ITS SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, CONFORMANCE WITH DESCRIPTION, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS, AND THE PROVISION OF OR FAILURE TO PROVIDE SUPPORT SERVICES. THIS LIMITED WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS. YOU MAY HAVE OTHERS, WHICH VARY FROM JURISDICTION TO JURISDICTION.

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL PGP OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES OR LOST PROFITS WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF BUSINESS PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS INFORMATION, OR ANY OTHER PECUNIARY LOSS) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE PRODUCT OR THE FAILURE TO PROVIDE SUPPORT SERVICES, EVEN IF PGP HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. IN ANY CASE, PGP'S CUMULATIVE AND ENTIRE LIABILITY TO YOU OR ANY OTHER PARTY FOR ANY LOSS OR DAMAGES RESULTING FROM ANY CLAIMS, DEMANDS OR ACTIONS ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THIS AGREEMENT SHALL NOT EXCEED THE PURCHASE PRICE PAID FOR THIS LICENSE. BECAUSE SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY, THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

Table of Contents

| | |
|---|-------------|
| Table of Contents | v |
| Figures | xiii |
| Tables..... | xv |
| Preface | xvii |
| Audience..... | xvii |
| Manual Organization | xvii |
| Conventions Used in This Document..... | xviii |
| Typographic Conventions..... | xviii |
| Notes, Warnings, and Tips Conventions | xviii |
| Development Environment and API Platform Support..... | xviii |
| Related Documentation | xix |
| Recommended Readings in Cryptography and Cryptographic Theory | xix |
| Chapter 1: Introduction to the PGP Software Development Kit..... | 21 |
| Overview of the PGPsdk | 21 |
| PGPsdk Functionality | 22 |
| Library Binaries | 23 |
| Header File Interface | 23 |
| Data Type, Constant, Macro, and Function Name Conventions..... | 24 |
| PGPContext..... | 25 |
| Reference Counts..... | 26 |
| Memory Management..... | 26 |
| Error Codes | 27 |
| PGPsdk API Details and Data Structures - Key Management | 27 |
| Key Database | 27 |
| Collections of Keys in a Key Database | 27 |
| Lists of Keys in a Key Database..... | 28 |
| Key Filters | 28 |
| Summary of the Opaque PGPsdk Data Types..... | 28 |
| PGPsdk API Details and Data Structures - Ciphering..... | 29 |
| Using the PGPsdk Ciphering API | 29 |
| Events and Callbacks..... | 30 |
| PGPsdk API Details and Data Structures - Authentication | 30 |
| Hash Functions | 30 |
| PGPsdk Code Example..... | 30 |
| Chapter 2: Function Reference - Key Management Functions | 31 |
| Introduction | 31 |
| Header Files..... | 32 |
| Constants and Data Structures..... | 32 |
| Events and Callbacks | 37 |
| Key Management Events | 38 |
| kPGPEvent_InitialEvent..... | 38 |
| kPGPEvent_NullEvent..... | 38 |
| kPGPEvent_KeyGenEvent..... | 39 |

| | |
|---------------------------------------|----|
| kPGPEvent_FinalEvent | 39 |
| Key Set Functions | 40 |
| PGPOpenDefaultKeyRings | 40 |
| PGPOpenKeyRingPair | 41 |
| PGPOpenKeyRing | 41 |
| PGPNewKeySet | 42 |
| PGPNewEmptyKeySet | 42 |
| PGPNewSingletonKeySet | 43 |
| PGPUnionKeySets | 43 |
| PGPFreeKeySet | 44 |
| PGPReloadKeyRings | 44 |
| PGPImportKeySet | 44 |
| PGPExportKeySet | 45 |
| PGPCountKeys | 46 |
| PGPKeySetIsMember | 46 |
| PGPKeySetIsMutable | 46 |
| PGPAddKeys | 46 |
| PGPRemoveKeys | 47 |
| PGPCheckKeyRingSigs | 47 |
| PGPPropagateTrust | 48 |
| PGPKeySetNeedsCommit | 49 |
| PGPCommitKeyRingChanges | 49 |
| PGPRevertKeyRingChanges | 50 |
| PGPOrderKeySet | 50 |
| PGPFreeKeyList | 50 |
| KeyFilter Functions | 51 |
| PGPNewKeyCreationTimeFilter | 51 |
| PGPNewKeyDisabledFilter | 51 |
| PGPNewKeyEncryptAlgorithmFilter | 52 |
| PGPNewKeyEncryptKeySizeFilter | 52 |
| PGPNewKeyExpirationTimeFilter | 53 |
| PGPNewKeyFingerPrintFilter | 53 |
| PGPNewKeyRevokedFilter | 53 |
| PGPNewSubKeyIDFilter | 54 |
| PGPNewUserIDEmailFilter | 54 |
| PGPNewUserIDNameFilter | 55 |
| PGPNewUserIDStringFilter | 55 |
| PGPNewKeySigAlgorithmFilter | 56 |
| PGPNewKeySigKeySizeFilter | 56 |
| PGPNewSigKeyIDFilter | 57 |
| PGPNewKeyIDFilter | 57 |
| PGPNegateFilter | 58 |
| PGPIntersectFilters | 58 |
| PGPUnionFilters | 59 |
| PGPFreeFilter | 59 |
| PGPFilterKeySet | 59 |
| PGPLDAPQueryFromFilter | 60 |
| PGPHKSQueryFromFilter | 60 |
| Key Iteration Functions | 61 |
| PGPNewKeyIter | 61 |
| PGPCopyKeyIter | 61 |

| | |
|--|----|
| PGPFreeKeyIter | 61 |
| PGPKeyIterIndex..... | 62 |
| PGPKeyIterKey..... | 62 |
| PGPKeyIterSubKey | 62 |
| PGPKeyIterUserID | 63 |
| PGPKeyIterSig | 63 |
| PGPKeyIterMove..... | 64 |
| PGPKeyIterSeek..... | 64 |
| PGPKeyIterNext | 65 |
| PGPKeyIterNextSubKey | 65 |
| PGPKeyIterNextUserID | 66 |
| PGPKeyIterNextUIDSig..... | 66 |
| PGPKeyIterPrev..... | 67 |
| PGPKeyIterPrevSubKey..... | 67 |
| PGPKeyIterPrevUserID..... | 68 |
| PGPKeyIterPrevUIDSig | 68 |
| PGPKeyIterRewind | 69 |
| PGPKeyIterRewindSubKey | 69 |
| PGPKeyIterRewindUserID | 69 |
| PGPKeyIterRewindUIDSig..... | 69 |
| Key Reference Count Functions | 70 |
| PGPIncKeySetRefCount..... | 70 |
| PGPIncFilterRefCount..... | 70 |
| PGPIncKeyListRefCount..... | 70 |
| Key Manipulation Functions..... | 71 |
| PGPGenerateKey | 71 |
| PGPChangePassphrase | 71 |
| PGPEnableKey..... | 72 |
| PGPDisableKey..... | 72 |
| PGPRevokeKey..... | 72 |
| PGPSetKeyAxiomatic..... | 73 |
| PGPUnsetKeyAxiomatic | 74 |
| PGPSetKeyTrust | 74 |
| PGPCompareKeys | 75 |
| PGPGenerateSubKey..... | 75 |
| PGPRemoveSubKey | 76 |
| PGPChangeSubKeyPassphrase | 76 |
| PGPRevokeSubKey | 76 |
| PGPAddUserID | 77 |
| PGPRemoveUserID | 77 |
| PGPSetPrimaryUserID | 78 |
| PGPCompareUserIDStrings..... | 78 |
| PGPSignUserID..... | 78 |
| PGPRemoveSig | 79 |
| PGPRevokeSig | 80 |
| PGPCountAdditionalRecipientRequests | 80 |
| PGPGetIndexedAdditionalRecipientRequest..... | 81 |
| PGPGetKeyEntropyNeeded | 82 |
| PGPGetSigCertifierKey | 83 |
| PGPPassphraseIsValid | 83 |
| Get Property Functions..... | 83 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| PGPGetHashAlgUsed | 83 |
| PGPGetKeyBoolean..... | 84 |
| PGPGetKeyNumber | 84 |
| PGPGetKeyPropertyBuffer | 85 |
| PGPGetKeyTime..... | 86 |
| PGPGetSubKeyBoolean..... | 86 |
| PGPGetSubKeyNumber..... | 86 |
| PGPGetSubKeyPropertyBuffer..... | 87 |
| PGPGetSubKeyTime | 87 |
| PGPGetUserIDNumber..... | 88 |
| PGPGetUserIDStringBuffer | 88 |
| PGPGetSigBoolean | 89 |
| PGPGetSigNumber..... | 89 |
| PGPGetSigTime | 90 |
| Convenience Property Functions..... | 90 |
| PGPGetPrimaryUserID | 90 |
| PGPGetPrimaryUserIDNameBuffer..... | 91 |
| PGPGetPrimaryUserIDValidity..... | 91 |
| Default Private Key Functions..... | 92 |
| PGPSetDefaultPrivateKey..... | 92 |
| PGPGetDefaultPrivateKey..... | 92 |
| Key User-Defined Data Functions..... | 93 |
| PGPSetKeyUserVal..... | 93 |
| PGPSetSubKeyUserVal | 93 |
| PGPSetSigUserVal | 93 |
| PGPSetUserIDUserVal | 94 |
| PGPGetKeyUserVal..... | 94 |
| PGPGetSubKeyUserVal | 94 |
| PGPGetSigUserVal | 95 |
| PGPGetUserIDUserVal | 95 |
| KeyID Functions..... | 95 |
| PGPImportKeyID | 95 |
| PGPExportKeyID..... | 96 |
| PGPGetKeyIDString..... | 96 |
| PGPGetKeyIDFromString..... | 97 |
| PGPGetKeyByKeyID | 97 |
| PGPGetKeyIDFromKey..... | 98 |
| PGPGetKeyIDFromSubKey | 98 |
| PGPGetKeyIDOfCertifier..... | 98 |
| PGPGetIndexedAdditionalRecipientRequestKeyID | 99 |
| PGPCompareKeyIDs..... | 99 |
| Key Item Context Retrieval Functions | 100 |
| PGPGetKeySetContext | 100 |
| PGPGetKeyListContext..... | 100 |
| PGPGetKeyIterContext | 100 |
| PGPGetKeyContext | 101 |
| PGPGetSubKeyContext..... | 101 |
| PGPGetUserIDContext..... | 101 |
| Chapter 3: Function Reference - Ciphering and Authentication Functions | 103 |
| Introduction | 103 |

| | |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Header Files..... | 103 |
| Constants and Data Structures..... | 103 |
| Events and Callbacks..... | 106 |
| Common Cipher Events..... | 108 |
| kPGPEvent_InitialEvent..... | 108 |
| kPGPEvent_NullEvent..... | 108 |
| kPGPEvent_WarningEvent..... | 109 |
| kPGPEvent_ErrorEvent..... | 109 |
| kPGPEvent_FinalEvent..... | 110 |
| PGPEncode-only Events..... | 110 |
| kPGPEvent_EntropyEvent..... | 110 |
| PGPDecode-only Events..... | 110 |
| kPGPEvent_BeginLexEvent..... | 110 |
| kPGPEvent_AnalyzeEvent..... | 111 |
| kPGPEvent_RecipientsEvent..... | 111 |
| kPGPEvent_KeyFoundEvent..... | 112 |
| kPGPEvent_SignatureEvent..... | 112 |
| kPGPEvent_DetachedSigEvent..... | 113 |
| kPGPEvent_PassphraseEvent..... | 113 |
| kPGPEvent_OutputEvent..... | 114 |
| kPGPEvent_EndLexEvent..... | 115 |
| Encode and Decode Functions..... | 115 |
| PGPEncode..... | 115 |
| PGPDecode..... | 116 |
| Low-Level Cipher Functions..... | 116 |
| PGPNewHashContext..... | 116 |
| PGPCopyHashContext..... | 117 |
| PGPFreeHashContext..... | 117 |
| PGPGetHashSize..... | 118 |
| PGPContinueHash..... | 118 |
| PGPFinalizeHash..... | 119 |
| PGPResetHash..... | 119 |
| PGPNewSymmetricCipherContext..... | 119 |
| PGPInitSymmetricCipher..... | 120 |
| PGPCopySymmetricCipherContext..... | 121 |
| PGPFreeSymmetricCipherContext..... | 121 |
| PGPGetSymmetricCipherSizes..... | 122 |
| PGPSymmetricCipherEncrypt..... | 122 |
| PGPSymmetricCipherDecrypt..... | 122 |
| PGPWashSymmetricCipher..... | 123 |
| PGPWipeSymmetricCipher..... | 123 |
| PGPNewCBCCContext..... | 123 |
| PGPInitCBC..... | 125 |
| PGPCopyCBCCContext..... | 126 |
| PGPFreeCBCCContext..... | 126 |
| PGPCBCEncrypt..... | 127 |
| PGPCBCDecrypt..... | 128 |
| PGPCBCGetSymmetricCipher..... | 128 |
| PGPNewCFBContext..... | 129 |
| PGPInitCFB..... | 131 |
| PGPCopyCFBContext..... | 131 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| PGPFreeCFBContext | 132 |
| PGPCFBEncrypt..... | 132 |
| PGPCFBDecrypt | 133 |
| PGPCFBGetSymmetricCipher | 133 |
| PGPCFBGetRandom..... | 133 |
| PGPCFBRandomCycle | 134 |
| PGPCFBRandomWash | 134 |
| PGPCFBSync..... | 135 |
| PGPNewPublicKeyContext | 135 |
| PGPFreePublicKeyContext | 135 |
| PGPGetPublicKeyOperationsSizes..... | 136 |
| PGPPublicKeyEncrypt | 136 |
| PGPPublicKeyVerifySignature | 137 |
| PGPNewPrivateKeyContext..... | 137 |
| PGPFreePrivateKeyContext..... | 138 |
| PGPGetPrivateKeyOperationsSizes | 138 |
| PGPPrivateKeyDecrypt..... | 139 |
| PGPPrivateKeySign..... | 139 |
| Chapter 4: Function Reference – Option List Functions..... | 141 |
| Introduction | 141 |
| Header Files..... | 141 |
| Option List Management Functions | 141 |
| PGPNewOptionList..... | 142 |
| PGPBuildOptionList..... | 142 |
| PGPCopyOptionList..... | 142 |
| PGPAppendOptionList..... | 143 |
| PGPFreeOptionList..... | 143 |
| PGPAddJobOptions..... | 144 |
| Common Encode/Decode Option List Functions | 144 |
| PGPOInputBuffer | 144 |
| PGPOInputFile..... | 145 |
| PGPOInputFileFSSpec (<i>MacOS platforms only</i>) | 145 |
| PGPODiscardOutput..... | 146 |
| PGPOAllocatedOutputBuffer | 146 |
| PGPOOutputBuffer | 147 |
| PGPOOutputFile..... | 148 |
| PGPOOutputFileFSSpec (<i>MacOS platforms only</i>)..... | 148 |
| PGPOAppendOutput..... | 149 |
| PGPOPGMIMEEncoding..... | 149 |
| PGPOomitMIMEVersion..... | 150 |
| PGPOLocalEncoding..... | 150 |
| PGPOOutputLineEndType..... | 151 |
| PGPODetachedSig..... | 152 |
| Common Encrypting and Signing Option List Functions | 152 |
| PGPOConventionalEncrypt..... | 152 |
| PGPOCipherAlgorithm..... | 153 |
| PGPOEncryptToKey..... | 153 |
| PGPOEncryptToKeySet..... | 154 |
| PGPOEncryptToUserID | 154 |
| PGPOHashAlgorithm..... | 154 |

| | |
|--|------------|
| PGPOSignWithKey..... | 155 |
| PGPOWarnBelowValidity..... | 155 |
| PGPOFailBelowValidity..... | 156 |
| Encode-only Option List Functions | 156 |
| PGPOAskUserForEntropy | 156 |
| PGPODataIsASCII..... | 157 |
| PGPORawPGPInput..... | 157 |
| PGPOForYourEyesOnly..... | 157 |
| PGPOArmorOutput | 158 |
| PGPOClearSign..... | 158 |
| Decode-only Option List Functions | 158 |
| PGPOImportKeysTo..... | 158 |
| PGPOPassThroughIfUnrecognized..... | 159 |
| PGPOSendEventIfKeyFound..... | 159 |
| (Sub-)Key Generation, Augmentation, and Revocation Option List Functions..... | 159 |
| PGPOAdditionalRecipientRequestKeySet..... | 159 |
| PGPOKeyGenName | 160 |
| PGPOKeyGenMasterKey | 160 |
| PGPOExportPrivateKeys | 161 |
| PGPOKeyGenFast..... | 161 |
| PGPOKeyGenParams..... | 161 |
| PGPOExpiration | 162 |
| PGPOExportable..... | 162 |
| PGPOSigRegularExpression | 162 |
| PGPOSigTrust..... | 163 |
| Misc. Option List Functions..... | 163 |
| PGPONullOption..... | 163 |
| PGPOCompression..... | 164 |
| PGPOCommentString | 164 |
| PGPOVersionString..... | 165 |
| PGPOPassphrase | 165 |
| PGPOPassphraseBuffer | 166 |
| PGPOPreferredAlgorithms..... | 166 |
| PGPOKeySetRef..... | 167 |
| PGPOSendNullEvents..... | 167 |
| PGPOEventHandler | 168 |
| PGPOLastOption | 168 |
| Chapter 5: Function Reference – Global Random Number Pool Management Functions..... | 169 |
| Introduction | 169 |
| Header Files..... | 169 |
| Random Number Pool Management Functions..... | 169 |
| PGPGlobalRandomPoolAddKeystroke | 169 |
| PGPGlobalRandomPoolAddMouse..... | 170 |
| Entropy Estimation Functions | 170 |
| PGPGlobalRandomPoolGetEntropy | 170 |
| PGPGlobalRandomPoolGetMinimumEntropy | 170 |
| PGPGlobalRandomPoolHasMinimumEntropy..... | 170 |
| PGPGlobalRandomPoolGetSize | 171 |
| Chapter 6: Function Reference - Utility Toolbox | 173 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| Introduction | 173 |
| Header Files..... | 173 |
| Constants and Data Structures..... | 173 |
| Context Creation and Management Functions | 174 |
| PGPNewContext..... | 174 |
| PGPNewContextCustom | 174 |
| PGPFreeContext..... | 175 |
| PGPSetContextUserValue | 176 |
| PGPGetContextUserValue | 176 |
| PGPContextGetRandomBytes | 176 |
| Memory Management Functions..... | 177 |
| PGPNewData | 177 |
| PGPNewSecureData..... | 177 |
| PGPFreeData..... | 178 |
| File Specification Functions | 178 |
| PGPNewFileSpecFromFSSpec (<i>MacOS platforms only</i>) | 178 |
| PGPNewFileSpecFromFullPath (<i>Non-MacOS platforms only</i>) | 179 |
| PGPCopyFileSpec | 179 |
| PGPFreeFileSpec | 180 |
| PGPGetFSSpecFromFileSpec (<i>MacOS platforms only</i>)..... | 180 |
| PGPGetFullPathFromFileSpec (<i>Non-MacOS platforms only</i>)..... | 180 |
| PGPMacBinaryToLocal (<i>MacOS platforms only</i>) | 181 |
| Preference Functions | 181 |
| PGPsdkInit | 181 |
| PGPsdkCleanup..... | 182 |
| PGPsdkLoadDefaultPrefs | 182 |
| PGPsdkLoadPrefs..... | 182 |
| PGPsdkSavePrefs..... | 183 |
| PGPsdkPrefSetData | 183 |
| PGPsdkPrefSetFileSpec | 184 |
| PGPsdkPrefGetData | 184 |
| PGPsdkPrefGetFileSpec | 184 |
| Date/Time Functions | 185 |
| PGPGetTime | 185 |
| PGPGetPGPTimeFromStdTime..... | 185 |
| PGPGetStdTimeFromPGPTime..... | 185 |
| PGPGetYMDFromPGPTime..... | 186 |
| PGPTimeFromMacTime (<i>MacOS platforms only</i>) | 187 |
| PGPTimeToMacTime (<i>MacOS platforms only</i>) | 187 |
| Error Look-Up Functions | 187 |
| PGPGetErrorString..... | 187 |
| Chapter 7: Function Reference - Feature (Capability) Query Functions | 189 |
| Introduction | 189 |
| Header Files..... | 189 |
| Constants and Data Structures..... | 189 |
| Feature (Capability) Query Functions | 190 |
| PGPGetFeatureFlags..... | 190 |
| PGPCountPublicKeyAlgorithms..... | 191 |
| PGPGetIndexedPublicKeyAlgorithmInfo..... | 191 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| PGPCountSymmetricCiphers | 192 |
| PGPGetIndexedSymmetricCipherInfo | 193 |
| PGPGetSDKVersion | 194 |
| PGPGetSDKString | 194 |
| Chapter 8: Function Reference – Key Server Functions | 197 |
| Introduction | 197 |
| Header Files | 197 |
| Constants and Data Structures | 197 |
| Events and Callbacks | 198 |
| Key Server Request Events | 199 |
| kPGPEvent_InitialEvent | 199 |
| kPGPEvent_KeyServerEvent | 200 |
| kPGPEvent_KeyServerSignEvent | 200 |
| kPGPEvent_FinalEvent | 201 |
| Key Server Functions | 202 |
| PGPKeyServerInit | 202 |
| PGPNewKeyServerFromURL | 202 |
| PGPLDAPNewServerMonitor | 203 |
| PGPLDAPFreeServerMonitor | 205 |
| PGPFreeKeyServer | 205 |
| PGPKeyServerOpen | 205 |
| PGPQueryKeyServer | 206 |
| PGPUploadToKeyServer | 207 |
| PGPDeleteFromKeyServer(<i>LDAP key servers only</i>) | 208 |
| PGPDisableFromKeyServer(<i>LDAP key servers only</i>) | 209 |
| PGPGetKeyServerErrorString | 210 |
| PGPKeyServerClose | 210 |
| PGPKeyServerCleanup | 210 |
| Appendix A: PGPsdk Error Summary | 211 |
| Appendix B: References and Recommended Reading | 215 |
| Introductory Readings | 215 |
| Other Readings | 215 |
| Glossary | 217 |
| Index | 225 |

Figures

| | | |
|-------------|--|-----|
| Figure 2-1: | Diffie-Hellman Key Structure..... | 31 |
| Figure 2-2: | RSA Key Structure..... | 31 |
| Figure 2-3: | (Sub-)Key Generation Event Sequence. | 37 |
| Figure 2-4: | Key Set Operation Event Sequence..... | 38 |
| Figure 3-1: | Encode Processing Event Sequence. | 107 |
| Figure 3-2: | Decode Processing Event Sequence. | 108 |
| Figure 6-1: | PGPNewContextStruct typedef..... | 174 |
| Figure 7-1: | PGPAlgorithmInfo typedef..... | 189 |
| Figure 7-2: | PGPPublicKeyAlgorithmInfo typedef..... | 190 |
| Figure 7-3: | PGPSymmetricCipherInfo typedef..... | 190 |
| Figure 8-1: | PGPKeyServerMonitor typedef..... | 198 |
| Figure 8-2: | Key Server Request Processing Event Sequence. | 199 |

Tables

| | | |
|-------------|--|-----|
| Table 1-1: | Organization of Public Header Files in This Document | 21 |
| Table 1-2: | Common Opaque Data Types | 28 |
| Table 1-3: | Key-related Opaque Data Types..... | 29 |
| Table 1-4: | Low-level Cipher-related Opaque Data Types | 29 |
| Table 2-1: | Key Ring OPEN Flag Values..... | 32 |
| Table 2-2: | Key Ordering Specification Values..... | 32 |
| Table 2-3: | Comparison Option Specification Values..... | 32 |
| Table 2-4: | Key- and Sub-Key Related Property Specification Values..... | 33 |
| Table 2-5: | User ID-Related Property Specification Values..... | 33 |
| Table 2-6: | Signature-Related Property Specification Values..... | 33 |
| Table 2-7: | Key ID String Type Specification Values..... | 34 |
| Table 2-8a: | Valid PGPOptionListRef Options for Key Generation Functions..... | 34 |
| Table 2-8b: | Valid PGPOptionListRef Options for Key Generation (User ID) Functions..... | 35 |
| Table 2-8c: | Valid PGPOptionListRef Options for Key Revocation Functions..... | 36 |
| Table 3-1: | Event Type Values..... | 103 |
| Table 3-2: | Lexical Section Type Values..... | 104 |
| Table 3-3: | Hash Algorithm Selection Values..... | 104 |
| Table 3-4a: | Symmetric Cipher Algorithm Selection Values..... | 104 |
| Table 3-4b: | Symmetric Cipher Algorithm Key Size Values..... | 104 |
| Table 3-5: | Public Key Algorithm Selection Values..... | 104 |
| Table 3-6: | Public Key Message Format Values..... | 104 |
| Table 3-7a: | Key Trust Values..... | 105 |
| Table 3-7b: | Name Trust Values..... | 105 |
| Table 3-8: | Validity Level Values..... | 105 |
| Table 3-9: | Line Ending Option Values..... | 105 |
| Table 3-10: | Local Encoding Option Values..... | 105 |
| Table 3-11: | Valid PGPOptionListRef Options for Ciphering and Authentication Functions..... | 105 |
| Table 6-1: | Memory Management Option Values..... | 173 |
| Table 6-2a: | MacOS File Creator Values..... | 173 |
| Table 6-2b: | MacOS File Type Values..... | 173 |
| Table 6-3: | Preference Selector Values..... | 173 |
| Table 7-1: | PGPGetFeatureFlags Feature (Capability) Selector Values..... | 189 |
| Table 7-2: | kPGPFeatures_GeneralSelector Mask Values..... | 189 |
| Table 7-3: | kPGPFeatures_GeneralSelector Mask Values..... | 189 |
| Table 8-1: | Key Server State Values..... | 197 |
| Table 8-2: | Key Server Query Completion Values..... | 197 |
| Table 8-3: | Key Server Space Values..... | 197 |
| Table 8-4: | Key Server Access Values..... | 198 |
| Table 8-5: | Valid PGPQueryKeyServer Filters for Key Server Protocols..... | 198 |
| Table A-1: | Generic Errors..... | 211 |
| Table A-2: | Encode/Decode Errors..... | 211 |
| Table A-3: | Macintosh MacBinary Format Errors..... | 212 |
| Table A-4: | KeySet Filter Errors..... | 212 |
| Table A-5: | Rarely Encountered PGP Errors..... | 212 |
| Table A-6: | Key Errors..... | 213 |
| Table A-7: | Signature Errors..... | 213 |
| Table A-8: | KeyDB Errors..... | 214 |
| Table A-9: | Key Server Errors..... | 214 |

Preface

Inside the PGPsdk is the reference manual for the PGP Software Development Kit (PGPsdk), Version 1.1. This initial release of the PGPsdk provides developers the functionality to readily add the PGP peer-reviewed cryptographic technology to their own applications. Because this is a reference manual, only a minimum of introductory or tutorial material is presented.

By using the PGPsdk as a part of your development effort, you can

- develop products that are as secure as *PGP for Business Security Version 5.5* (and optionally interoperating with it, where appropriate)
- easily develop, maintain, and use PGP cryptographic components in your application
- provide yourself and your customers with the confidence that comes from using the PGP trusted and peer-reviewed technology in your security protocols

The engineers at **Pretty Good Privacy, Inc.**, have used the identical PGPsdk supplied to external developers to produce *PGP for Business Security, Version 5.5*. Numerous excerpts from a sample application representing a greatly simplified version of *PGP for Business Security, Version 5.5* are included in this manual. In keeping with the PGP corporate policy of complete and open publication of source code for peer review, the final *PGP for Business Security, Version 5.5 Source Code* books (when available) will serve as the essential and definitive reference for developers using the PGPsdk for their own application development.

Audience

This book is written for experienced software engineers and application developers who need to incorporate the PGP cryptographic functionality in their application, or are developing a product that needs to communicate with other applications that create or understand PGP-encrypted or cryptographically signed data. Since the initial release of the PGPsdk supports a C language Application Programming Interface (API), you should have C language experience to use this product.

If you are not familiar with basic cryptographic concepts, PGP recommends that you read *Applied Cryptography, Second Edition*, by Bruce Schneier (John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1996). This volume is arguably the best introduction and general reference to cryptography currently available to the public. For additional readings on **cryptography** and cryptographic theory, see the short list of recommended readings at the end of this chapter, or the more extensive list in Appendix C, "References and Recommended Reading."

Manual Organization

Inside the PGPsdk presents the PGP cryptographic functionality in a manner that corresponds to the organization of the PGPsdk Software Library. Several overview chapters appear first, and detail the basic concepts, organization, and functional divisions of the PGPsdk.

Following the overview chapters are detailed reference chapters for each functional division of the PGPsdk, which contain detailed descriptions of the functions in each functional division. The reference chapters include

- an introductory overview of the functional division
- a list of the names of the associated C language header files
- Tables containing `#define` and enumerated type constants and their descriptions
- C language code fragments for any associated datatypes and structures
- a logical ordering of the events and/or functions within the functional division

Each event description includes

- an explanation of the event
- the data type and structures passed to/from the event
- the allowed PGPO[ption] values (if any)

Each function description includes

- the function's C language prototype
- argument descriptions
- an explanation of the function
- optional notable error codes
- optional notes, warnings, and tips on using the function
- optional sample code

The manual contains appendixes detailing

- error codes
- recommended readings in cryptography

The manual concludes with

- a glossary of cryptographic terms
- an index

Conventions Used in This Document

Typographic Conventions

C language code listings, reserved words, and names of data structures, fields, constants, arguments, and functions are shown in `Courier Font`.

Key terms or concepts appear in **boldface**, and are defined in the Glossary.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips Conventions

Notes may contain:

- non-essential but useful and/or interesting information
- information that is essential for understanding the material presented

Warnings contain information that is essential to understand. Failure to do so could result in crashes and/or loss of data.

Tips contain information specifically intended to aid the PGPsdk developer in using the function to the best advantage.

Development Environment and API Platform Support

The PGPsdk, Version 1.1 binaries and public header files are supported on three major platforms: Unix, 32-bit Windows, and Macintosh. While platforms and compilers other than those listed below may work with the PGPsdk (and some will be supported in future releases), the Version 1.1 release has only been verified as working with the following:

- Unix platform and compiler support includes Solaris for Sparc, Linux x86, OpenBSD x86, and NetBSD x86 environments, each using the GNU C compiler.
- 32-bit Windows platform and compiler support includes those 32-bit environments using the Microsoft Visual C++ 5.0 compiler

- MacOS platform and compiler support includes MacOS Version 7.6 environments using the MetroWerks CodeWarrior Version 12.

Related Documentation

PGP for Business Security, Version 5.5 Users Guide for Mac and Windows

PGP Security Officer's Guide, Version 5.5

Recommended Readings in Cryptography and Cryptographic Theory

Applied Cryptography, Second Edition, by Bruce Schneier, 1996, John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Dr. Dobbs Essential Books on Cryptography and Security CD-ROM, (includes searchable version of Schneier, and several other useful books and papers), 1997, Dr. Dobbs CD-ROM Library.

PGP 5.0 Platform Independent Source Code - Five Volumes, Philip Zimmermann and Mark Weaver, eds., Warthman Associates, 1997.

PGP 5.0 Win95 Source Code - Three Volumes, Philip Zimmermann and Mark Weaver, eds., Warthman Associates, 1997.

PGP 5.0 Mac Source Code - Four Volumes, Philip Zimmermann and Mark Weaver, eds., Warthman Associates, 1997.

Chapter 1: Introduction to the PGP Software Development Kit

Overview of the PGPsdk

The PGPsdk consists of nine functional groups including, among others, key management functions, high- and low-level cryptographic functions, and pseudo-random number generation functions. Each group has a separately-compilable public header file that allows developers to include only the PGP cryptographic functionality that they want to impart to their applications. The more closely related header files are further grouped into six major functional areas. Each of these major functional areas is documented in a separate chapter in the Function Reference section of this document (Chapter 2 through Chapter 8).

Table 1-1: Organization of Public Header Files in This Document

| Header File | Chapter |
|----------------------|---|
| pgpKeys.h | Chapter 2: Key Management Functions |
| pgpCBC.h | Chapter 3: Ciphering and Authentication Functions |
| pgpCFB.h | |
| pgpEncode.h | |
| pgpHash.h | |
| pgpPublicKey.h | |
| pgpSymmetricCipher.h | |
| pgpEncode.h | Chapter 4: Option List Functions |
| pgpRandomPool | Chapter 5: Random Number Generation Functions |
| pgpPubTypes.h | Chapter 6: Utility Toolbox |
| pgpSDKPrefs.h | |
| pgpUtilities.h | |
| pgpFeatures.h | |
| pgpKeyServer.h | Chapter 7: Feature (Capability) Query Functions |
| pgpKeyServerTypes.h | Chapter 8: Key Server Functions |
| pgpErrors.h | Appendix A: PGPsdk Error Summary |

Here are summaries of the six chapters in the function reference section of this book:

- Chapter 2: Function Reference - Key Management Functions. Key management functions allow applications to create, sign, add, remove, search for, and check the validity of keys on disk-based or in-memory key rings. Also found here are functions to check and set property values for keys, according to the PGP **Web of Trust** model. The key management function prototypes are listed in the public header file `pgpKeys.h`.
- Chapter 3: Function Reference - Ciphering and Authentication Functions. Algorithm-independent functions are provided for high-level cryptographic functions such as encrypting, decrypting, hashing, signing, and verifying messages. Not only are applications free of the details of the particular algorithms being used, but also new algorithms can be incorporated transparently as they become available. The high-level cryptographic function prototypes are listed in the public header file `pgpEncode.h`. The low-level cryptographic function prototypes are listed in the public header files `pgpCBC.h`, `pgpCFB.h`, `pgpHash.h`, and `pgpSymmetricCipher.h`, which appear as `#include` directives in `pgpEncode.h`.
- Chapter 4: Function Reference – Option List Functions. Option list functions provide a flexible and extensible mechanism for presenting arbitrary option specifications and data to functions accepting this mechanism. Option lists may be persistent or local to the function accepting them, and so support modular establishment and combining of option groups. Since the option list mechanism

was originally developed for encode/decode operations, the function prototypes are listed in the public header file `pgpEncode.h`.

- Chapter 5: Function Reference - Random Number Generation Functions. The cryptographic functions employed by the PGPsdk require random numbers to operate correctly. The PGPsdk provides pseudo-random number generation functions, along with functions to manage random numbers seeded from mouse movements, keystrokes, and other events. The random number generation function prototypes are listed in the public header file `pgpRandomPool.h`.
- Chapter 6: Function Reference - Utility Toolbox. Sections of the PGPsdk require miscellaneous utility functions such as context creation, memory management, file management, and date/time functions. These utility function prototypes are listed in the PGPsdk public header file `pgpUtilities.h`. Additionally, this Chapter 6 documents a translation function that converts `PGPError` numeric codes to English language character strings. This utility function prototypes are listed in the PGPsdk public header file `pgpUtilities.h`.
- Chapter 7: Function Reference - Feature (Capability) Query Functions. The present state of U.S. export law and the continuously evolving set of cryptographic standards, algorithms, and formats, make the existence of multiple versions of the PGPsdk a very real possibility. For example, a version intended for export may support signing but not encryption. The PGPsdk includes functions that return version numbers and the availability of specific features (capabilities). These query function prototypes are listed in the public header file `pgpFeatures.h`.
- Chapter 8: Function Reference – Key Server Functions. The PGPsdk includes functions to facilitate communicating with both **HTTP** and **LDAP** key servers. These key server function prototypes are listed in the public header file `pgpKeyServer.h`.

PGPsdk Functionality

The PGP Software Development Kit (PGPsdk) allows software engineers and application developers to seamlessly incorporate the PGP cryptographic technology into such applications as e-mail package plug-ins, secure electronic interchange packages, and secure financial transaction packages. The PGP cryptographic technology consists of the following three basic cryptographic elements

- **key management**
- ciphering (**encryption/decryption**)
- **authentication** (signing and verifying)

Key management functions are used to

- create and/or add **keys**
- remove keys
- search for keys meeting certain ownership and/or property criteria
- check the validity of disk-based or in-memory key rings
- check and/or set key property values

Ciphering (encrypting/decrypting) functions are used to

- encrypt data or files
- decrypt data or files

Authentication (signing and verifying) functions are used to

- sign messages or data files
- verify the authenticity of messages or data files

Other functional areas include **pseudo-random** number generation, utility, and query functions that

- manage pseudo-random numbers seeded from mouse movements, keystrokes, and other events
- manage memory
- specify files
- effect date/time conversion (platform dependent)
- convert error codes to readable strings

- indicate the availability of specific features within the PGPsdk

The Application Programmer's Interface (**API**) to the PGPsdk consists of C language functions, and provides developers with a consistent interface and error handling protocols. These functions are organized into functional groups, and each group comprises a function reference chapter of this document (Chapter 2 through Chapter 8). Each of these chapters includes

- an overview of the functional group
- a logical ordering of the functions within the group (as applicable)
- the function group's associated header file(s)
- a full description of each individual function

The full description of each function includes

- a brief description of the function
- the function's C language prototype
- argument descriptions
- noteworthy error codes
- tips and notes on using the function
- sample code (as required)

To use the PGPsdk, simply incorporate calls to the PGPsdk functions into your C language application following the function prototypes listed in the public header files supplied as part of the PGPsdk and including the necessary header files, and then link with the supplied PGPsdk library binaries. Two versions of the PGPsdk library binaries are supplied: a debug version and a non-debug version. Both versions perform essentially the same error checking, and report the same error return codes. The debug version additionally asserts itself on error conditions, and reports the errors to the default output destination (platform dependent).

Library Binaries

The PGPsdk library binaries contain all of the functions described by the header file function prototypes, and link with your application. These libraries are distributed in both debug and non-debug versions, and have the following names on the following supported platforms:

- MacOS PGPsdkLib
 PGPsdkKeyServerLib
- Win-32 PGPsdkLib.dll
 PGPsdKS.dll
- Unix libPGPsdk.a
 libPGPsdkKeyServer.a

Note that the key server library is required only for those applications that implement direct communication with a key server (see Chapter 8).

Header File Interface

The PGPsdk header file interface consists of one major header file for each functional group. Generally, PGPsdk developers will need to `#include` only that header file to use the associated area of the PGPsdk. The major header files in the initial release of the PGPsdk include

- `pgpCBC.h`
- `pgpCFB.h`
- `pgpEncode.h`
- `pgpFeatures.h`
- `pgpHash.h`
- `pgpKeys.h`
- `pgpKeyServer.h`

- `pgpRandomPool.h`
- `pgpSDKPrefs.h`
- `pgpSymmetricCipher.h`
- `pgpUserInterface.h`
- `pgpUtilities.h`

These major header files may additionally `#include` the following header files that detail common data types, error codes, and platform specific data types, limits, macros, and constants.

- `pgpBase.h`
- `pgpConfig.h`
- `pgpErrors.h`
- `pgpKeyServerTypes.h`
- `pgpPubTypes.h`

Data Type, Constant, Macro, and Function Name Conventions

PGPsdk data types, macros, and functions have names beginning with `PGP`; PGPsdk constants have names beginning with `kPGP` (see Table 1-2).

Most PGPsdk data types are opaque, that is, they are references to the actual data. These data types have names of the form:

```
PGPnameRef
PGPConstnameRef
```

where *name* describes the data type. Because these data types are opaque, a reference to one is not necessarily a pointer in the C language sense, and so they should never be dereferenced.

Most of the PGPsdk opaque data types have special values to indicate that they are not referencing a valid instance. These values are useful for establishing initial or default values, and have names of the form:

```
kInvalidPGPnameRef
```

The PGPsdk supports byte array data through use of the C language types `char[]` and `void[]`, as well as their associated pointer types `char*` and `void*`. While these basic types may or may not have implementational differences, they do have important PGPsdk-specific semantic differences:

- `char[]` and `char*` always denote NUL terminated byte arrays, that is, C language strings
- `void[]` and `void*` always denote arbitrary byte arrays that may coincidentally be NUL terminated.

PGPsdk constants have names of the form:

```
kPGPCategoryDescription
```

for example, `kPGPKeyPropCanSign`. `kPGP` is the constant data type prefix, `KeyProp` indicates that the constant belongs to the category that refers to key properties, and `CanSign` implies a boolean indicating whether or not the associated key is allowed to sign other keys.

PGPsdk macros and functions have names of the form:

```
PGPname
```

which is a very general format. However, there are several categories of functions that have noteworthy naming conventions and implied semantics:

Data Reference Macros

Macros having names of the form:

`PGPnameRefIsValid`

facilitate validation of opaque data types, and return a boolean value. Use of these macros is strongly encouraged, as they provide the PGPsdk developer with a guaranteed method for determining the validity of a data reference, while also maintaining its opacity.

PGPNewDatatype and PGPFreeDatatype

`PGPNewDatatype` functions allocate a new, persistent instance of a PGPsdk opaque data types. The PGPsdk developer must eventually deallocate the instance with the corresponding “free” function. For example, `PGPNewContext` allocates a new `PGPContextRef`, and `PGPFreeContext` deallocates a `PGPContextRef`. Note that closely related PGPsdk opaque data types may share the same “free” function, for example, `PGPNewContextCustom` also uses `PGPFreeContext`.

PGPOption

`PGPOption` functions allocate `PGPOptionListRef` instances that are automatically deallocated once they are used in an option list management function (for example, `PGPBuildOptionList`), or as a sub-option (for example, `PGPOSignWithKey(..., PGPOPassphrase (...), ...)`).

Other PGPsdk data types that have noteworthy implied semantics include:

PGPSize

`PGPSize` implies a length quantity, and further implies an in-memory context (similar to the C language type `size_t`). Values associated with `PGPSize` items are in terms of the platform’s commonly used length quantity, which currently is always in terms of 8-bit bytes.

PGPFlags

`PGPFlags` items differs for other PGPsdk data types that assume enumerated values in that the associated values may be combined with boolean expressions, for example:

```
if ( ( myFlags & ( kPGPKeyRingOpenFlags_Mutable | kPGPKeyRingOpenFlags_Create ) ) )
{
    /* features-are-available code */
}
```

PGPContext

The PGPsdk incorporates a global context /configuration mechanism for all PGPsdk functionality. The `PGPContext` data type replaces the many global variables used in previous PGP libraries, and thus provides a more robust and manageable application environment. Typically, an application will create a `PGPContext` at startup, use the context throughout its run, and finally free the context on exit. The resultant `PGPContextRef` value is passed directly to most of the PGPsdk functions. However, some PGPsdk data types incorporate the `PGPContextRef` used to create them, and so the functions that accept these data types as arguments generally do not also require a `PGPContextRef` argument.

A `PGPContext` must *not* be freed until and unless all data items allocated using that context have already been freed. Failure to follow this protocol will not only result in memory leaks, but also precipitate application failures due to the associated context being invalid or incorrect.

A `PGPContext` is created and destroyed as follows:

```
PGPError          err;
PGPUInt32         clientAPIVersion = kPGPsdkVersion;
PGPContextRef     newContext;
```

```

PGPContextRef      newCustomContext;
PGPNewContextStruct newCustomContextStruct;
struct pvtUserData
{
    PGPUInt32    pvtNum;
    char         pvtStr[ 256 ];
}    MyUserValue;

newCustomContextStruct.sizeOfStruct = sizeof( PGPNewContextStruct );
newCustomContextStruct.allocProc = MyAllocProc;
newCustomContextStruct.reallocProc = MyReAllocProc;
newCustomContextStruct.deallocProc = MyDeAllocProc;
newCustomContextStruct.allocUserValue = ( PGPUserValue )&MyUserValue;

err = PGPNewContext( clientAPIVersion,                /* Create Default */
                    &newContext );
err = PGPNewContextCustom( clientAPIVersion,           /* Create Custom */
                           &newCustomContextStruct,
                           &newCustomContext );
err = PGPFreeContext( newContext );                  /* Free Either */
err = PGPFreeContext( newCustomContext );

```

Reference Counts

Most PGP opaque data types have an associated reference count of type `...RefCount`, which provides for simplified garbage collection. Upon creation of such a data type, its reference count is initialized to one. From that point, the PGPsdk automatically tracks the number of references to a particular resource, for example, a given key set may be referenced by any number of key lists and/or iterators. This not only results in a level of context independence, but also ensures that a resource's memory is released only when its last reference is deleted. The PGPsdk also provides functions to support manual adjustment of reference counts.

However, the automatic nature of the reference count management applies only to implied references. This means that the reference count of an underlying key set is automatically incremented whenever a key list is created from it, and is automatically decremented when that key list is freed. The PGPsdk developer is expected to adhere to the following basic rule:

All PGP opaque data types explicitly created (PGPNew... functions), copied (PGPCopy... functions), or have had their reference count manually incremented must be freed using the appropriate PGPFree... function.

Memory Management

Memory management within the PGPsdk is normally handled transparently by default functions analogous to the Standard C Library functions `malloc`, `dealloc`, and `realloc`. However, developers can override this behavior by specifying their own equivalent `allocate`, `deallocate`, and `reallocate` functions (see the `PGPNewContextStruct` data type that is used by the `PGPNewContextCustom` function).

Generally speaking, any PGPsdk function having a name of the form

`PGPNew...datatype...`

accepts a `PGPContext` reference, and allocates memory which the caller must explicitly deallocate with the corresponding PGPsdk function having a name of the form

PGPFree...datatype...

Error Codes

With several exceptions, PGPsdk functions return an error code (`kPGPError_...`) or `void`, and place any result values into output arguments. This convention allows for simple and consistent error checking. The PGPsdk provides the macros `IsPGPError` and `IsntPGPError` to test a function's return code, as shown in the following example:

```
if ( IsPGPError( err = pgpOrderKeySet( src, kPGPUserIDOrdering, &keyList ) ) )
{
    /* error handling code */
}
else
{
    /* keyList holds the sorted key set */
}
```

Essentially all PGPsdk functions that return an error code can return one or more of the following:

- `kPGPError_NoErr`
- `kPGPError_BadParams`
- `kPGPError_OutOfMemory`

and these codes are rarely mentioned in the following function reference chapters. Of course, a function that has no parameters cannot return `kPGPError_BadParams`, nor can a function that does not allocate a new data item return `kPGPError_OutOfMemory`.

PGPsdk API Details and Data Structures - Key Management

Understanding how the PGPsdk key management functions perform their tasks requires understanding of several PGPsdk Version 1.1-specific concepts and data types. The following sections introduce the PGP key database, collections of keys from a key database, ordered lists of keys from a key database, iterating methods on a list of keys, and the construction of filters that in turn create collections and ordered lists of keys from a key database.

Key Database

The PGP key database represents one or more key files, and can be thought of as a backing store for a key ring. It can be composed of any number of files on disk, or it can be entirely memory based. While the `PGPKeyDB` is a very important data type to understand, it is currently never exported, nor is there currently a user-visible reference type.

Every key in the system belongs to exactly one key database. Whenever a key is modified, its corresponding key database is also modified. While equivalent keys may exist simultaneously in several key databases, each instance is a distinct key from the point of view of the PGPsdk key management functions - each instance has a unique pointer, and so modifications to one will not affect any of the others.

Collections of Keys in a Key Database

The `PGPKeySet` data type represents a subset (referred to as a *key set*) of exactly one key database, and may be thought of as a view onto that key database. The function `PGPOpenDefaultKeyrings` opens the caller's default key rings, which is conceptually a key database consisting of two files - the

caller's **public key** and **private key** key ring files. The function then creates and returns a key set containing the full set of keys in that key database.

Any number of key sets may exist for a given key database (see the discussion on key filters in this chapter). For instance, one could create a key set that includes all keys, as well as a key set that includes only those keys signed by "Philip Zimmermann".

A key set is generally an "active" or a "live" view on a key database. To demonstrate what an active view is, consider a key set that is composed of all the keys that contain the name "Mark." Creating this key set with an active key filter and then adding a key containing name "Mark" to the associated key database results in that key being automatically and instantaneously added to the created key set, and vice versa.

Lists of Keys in a Key Database

Key sets have no ordering – they are merely collections of keys. The `PGPKeyList` data type facilitates operations on key sets by imposing an ordering that may be based on any sortable data item or sub-structure within a key, for example, name or key ID. The function `PGPOrderKeySet` accepts a key set and a sort order specification, and yields a key list. Like key sets, key lists are also "active", and are automatically updated whenever their associated key set is changed.

The `PGPKeyIter` data type implements iterating over a key list. Initially, it references the pseudo-element just before the first element in the key list, and then increments itself successively through each element of the key list. Most changes to a key list that occur while iterating are handled automatically. For example, inserting a new key causes the iteration to automatically "follow" the key it was working on. The `PGPKeyIter` data type also supports iteration over the sub-structures within the key, for example, iterating over the user ID structures of the key.

Key Filters

The PGPsdk allows the developer to construct very complicated key **filters** for operating on elements of the key database. These filters are built from **primitive key filters**, which in turn are created by the various `PGPNew...Filter` functions. These primitive key filters are generally of the form:

```
select all X that contain Y
```

A set of related functions allows negation, union, and intersection of primitive key filters, and so allows creation of key filters that implement arbitrary expressions such as

```
select all keys NOT containing "Phil" AND
having keylengths longer than 1024 bits
```

Once the key filter is complete, the `PGPFilterKeySet` function applies the resultant key filter to a key set, yielding a new key set whose members satisfy the key filter criteria. Note that this resultant new key set may be empty.

Summary of the Opaque PGPsdk Data Types

Many of the data types described in this section are actually opaque to the PGPsdk user, and can only be passed as function arguments. Except for `PGPContextRef`, these data types exist as pairs, with one having the `const` qualifier. The following tables summarize these data types:

Table 1-2: Common Opaque Data Types

| Data Type |
|----------------------------|
| <code>PGPContextRef</code> |

| |
|-----------------------|
| PGPFileSpecRef |
| PGPOptionListRef |
| |
| PGPConstFileSpecRef |
| PGPConstOptionListRef |

Table 1-3: Key-related Opaque Data Types

| Data Type |
|--------------------|
| PGPFilterRef |
| PGPKeyRef |
| PGPKeydbRef |
| PGPKeyIterRef |
| PGPKeyListRef |
| PGPKeySetRef |
| PGPSigRef |
| PGPSubKeyRef |
| PGPUserIDRef |
| |
| PGPConstFilterRef |
| PGPConstKeyRef |
| PGPConstKeydbRef |
| PGPConstKeyIterRef |
| PGPConstKeyListRef |
| PGPConstKeySetRef |
| PGPConstSigRef |
| PGPSubKeyRef |
| PGPConstUserIDRef |

Table 1-4: Low-level Cipher-related Opaque Data Types

| Data Type |
|-----------------------------------|
| PGPCBCCContextRef |
| PGPCFBContextRef |
| PGPHashContextRef |
| PGPPrivateKeyContextRef |
| PGPPublicKeyContextRef |
| PGPSymmetricCipherContextRef |
| |
| PGPConstCBCCContextRef |
| PGPConstCFBContextRef |
| PGPConstHashContextRef |
| PGPConstPrivateKeyContextRef |
| PGPConstPublicKeyContextRef |
| PGPConstSymmetricCipherContextRef |

PGPsdk API Details and Data Structures - Ciphering

Using the PGPsdk Ciphering API

The PGPsdk Ciphering API has two high-level entry points: `PGPEncode` and `PGPDecode`. `PGPEncode` provides for all encrypting and signing, while `PGPDecode` provides for all decrypting and signature verification. Each function accepts a `PGPContextRef`, and a variable number of options that control the behavior of the function. The similarity of their prototypes is illustrated by the following examples:

```
PGPError      PGPEncode( PGPContextRef pgpContext,
                        PGPOptionListRef firstOption,
```

```

    ...,
    PGPOLastOption( void ) );

PGPError      PGPDecode( PGPCContextRef pgpContext,
                        PGPOptionListRef firstOption,
                        ...,
                        PGPOLastOption( void ) );

```

A large number of options is available for both `PGPEncode` and `PGPDecode`, and each is defined as a function returning a `PGPOptionListRef`. Some options are suitable only for encoding operations, some options are suitable only for decoding operations, and some options are suitable for both operations. These options are described in Chapter 3, “Function Reference - Cipherring and Authentication Functions.” A special argument provided by the `PGPOLastOption` function must appear as the last argument to indicate the end of the list.

Events and Callbacks

The `PGPOEventHandler` option allows the calling application to request callbacks when various events occur, and to define a function (**event handler**) that is the target of the callback. While an event handler is usually not needed for encryption operations, it is often needed for decryption operations.

An event handler serves two purposes – it provides notification to the calling application that an event has occurred, and provides a mechanism for the calling application to affect processing (in a limited, pre-defined manner). Notification includes a `PGPEvent` reference which, depending on the type of event, provides detailed information about the cause of the event. The calling application can then respond appropriately, which may or may not affect the course of further processing. For certain events, the calling application can modify the processing context by invoking `PGPAddJobOptions`.

PGPsdk API Details and Data Structures - Authentication

The PGPsdk performs authentication (signing and verification of messages) by using the supplied `PGPEncode` and `PGPDecode` functions. In the case of signing or verifying a message, the application invokes the appropriate `PGPO...` function(s) (for example, `PGPOSignWithKey` and `PGPODetachedSig`) to perform the needed authentication function. In the case of authentication, the message is first passed through a hash function before being signed by the sender's private key.

Hash Functions

The PGPsdk provides a number of **hash functions** (more commonly referred to as **hash algorithms**). Selection of a specific hash algorithm is sometimes implicit to the processing context; for example, **DSS** keys unequivocally use the **SHA-1** hash algorithm. For other processing contexts, the `PGPOHashAlgorithm` function can be used to “manually” configure the context; for example, the function can force the use of the SHA-1 hash function in an **RSA** signature.

PGPsdk Code Example

The sample code and other usage examples that appear in the Function Reference chapters of this book are for demonstration purposes only. The final *PGP for Business Security, Version 5.5 Source Code* books (when available) will serve as the essential and definitive reference for developers using the PGPsdk to develop their own secure applications.

Chapter 2: Function Reference - Key Management Functions

Introduction

The PGPsdk key management functions allow applications to create, sign, add, remove, search for, and check the validity of keys on disk-based or in-memory key rings. This Chapter 2 also documents functions that check and set property values for keys, as well as functions that import and export keys to files and buffers.

A PGP key is always a signing key, and for certain algorithms is also an encryption key. If a sub-key is present, then it is always considered to be an encryption key. Some algorithms, for example Diffie-Hellman, require sub-keys since the base key is always considered to be sign-only. Other algorithms, for example RSA, do not support sub-keys, and for these the base key is used for both signing and encrypting.

Diffie-Hellman keys may have associated **additional recipient request keys** (sometimes referred to by its marketing term, *additional decryption key*). When present, all messages encrypted to the base key are also automatically encrypted to each of the additional recipient request keys.

A key may have any number of associated sub-keys, additional recipient request (ARR) keys, and user IDs. A user ID in turn may have any number of associated signatures.

Figure 2-1. Diffie-Hellman Key Structure.

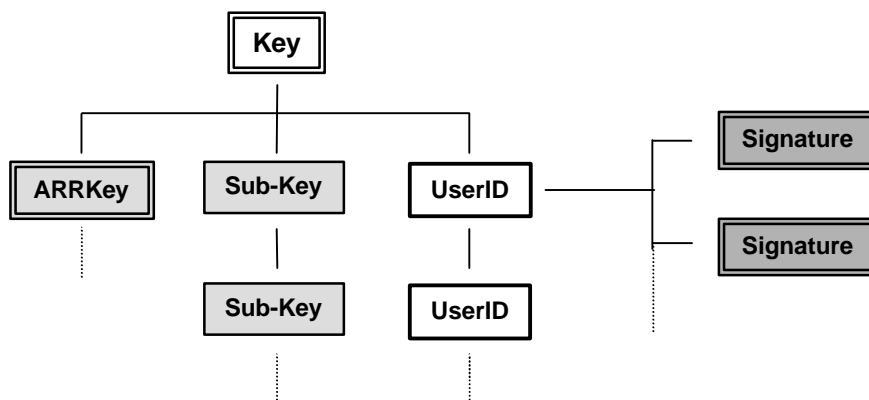
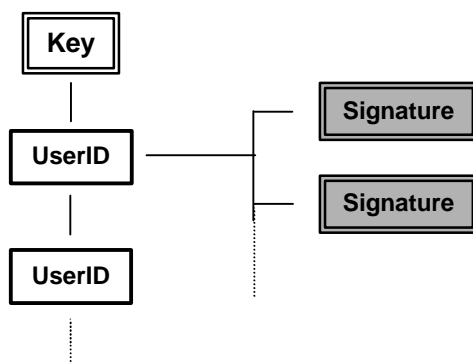


Figure 2-2. RSA Key Structure.



Header Files

pgpKeys.h

Constants and Data Structures

Table 2-1: Key Ring OPEN Flag Values.

| Key Ring Open Flag Constants |
|---------------------------------|
| kPGPKeyRingOpenFlags_Create |
| kPGPKeyRingOpenFlags_Mutable |
| kPGPKeyRingOpenFlags_Private*** |
| kPGPKeyRingOpenFlags_Reserved |
| kPGPKeyRingOpenFlags_Trusted*** |

*** Applies to PGPOpenKeyRing only.

Table 2-2: Key Ordering Specification Values.

| Key Ordering Constants |
|-----------------------------------|
| kPGPAnyOrdering |
| kPGPCreationOrdering |
| kPGPEncryptKeySizeOrdering |
| kPGPExpirationOrdering |
| kPGPKeyIDOrdering |
| kPGPSigKeySizeOrdering |
| kPGPTrustOrdering |
| kPGPUserIDOrdering |
| kPGPValidityOrdering |
| kPGPReverseCreationOrdering |
| kPGPReverseEncryptKeySizeOrdering |
| kPGPReverseExpirationOrdering |
| kPGPReverseKeyIDOrdering |
| kPGPReverseSigKeySizeOrdering |
| kPGPReverseTrustOrdering |
| kPGPReverseUserIDOrdering |
| kPGPReverseValidityOrdering |

Table 2-3: Comparison Option Specification Values.***

| Match Criterion Constants | |
|---------------------------|---|
| kPGPMatchDefault | same as kPGPMatchEqual |
| kPGPMatchEqual | searched value == supplied value |
| kPGPMatchGreaterOrEqual | searched value >= supplied value |
| kPGPMatchLessOrEqual | searched value <= supplied value |
| kPGPMatchSubString | searched value is contained in supplied value |

*** Certain functions that accept a match criteria value support kPGPMatchEqual and/or kPGPMatchSubString only. This primarily affects functions which deal with text and/or arbitrary byte data.

Table 2-4: Key- and Sub-Key Related Property Specification Values.

| Key and Sub-Key Property Constants |
|---|
| String Properties |
| kPGPKeyPropFingerprint |
| kPGPKeyPropPreferredAlgorithms |
| Numerical Properties |
| kPGPKeyPropAlgID |
| kPGPKeyPropBits |
| kPGPKeyPropTrust |
| kPGPKeyPropValidity |
| Time Properties |
| kPGPKeyPropCreation |
| kPGPKeyPropExpiration |
| Boolean Properties |
| kPGPKeyPropCanEncrypt |
| kPGPKeyPropCanSign |
| kPGPKeyPropHasUnverifiedRevocation |
| kPGPKeyPropIsAxiomatic |
| kPGPKeyPropIsDisabled |
| kPGPKeyPropIsExpired |
| kPGPKeyPropIsNotCorrupt |
| kPGPKeyPropIsRevoked |
| kPGPKeyPropIsSecret |
| kPGPKeyPropNeedsPassphrase |

Table 2-5: User ID-Related Property Specification Values.

| User ID Property Constants |
|-----------------------------------|
| String properties |
| kPGPUserIDPropName |
| Numeric properties |
| kPGPUserIDPropConfidence |
| kPGPUserIDPropValidity |
| Time properties |
| |
| Boolean properties |
| |

Table 2-6: Signature-Related Property Specification Values.

| Signature Property Constants |
|-------------------------------------|
| String properties |
| |
| Numeric properties |
| kPGPSigPropAlgID |
| kPGPSigPropKeyID |
| kPGPSigPropTrustValue |
| Time properties |
| kPGPSigPropCreation |
| kPGPSigPropExpiration |
| Boolean properties |
| kPGPSigPropHasUnverifiedRevocation |
| kPGPSigPropIsExportable |
| kPGPSigPropIsMySig*** |
| kPGPSigPropIsNotCorrupt |

| |
|-----------------------|
| kPGPSigPropIsRevoked |
| kPGPSigPropIsTried |
| kPGPSigPropIsVerified |

*** kPGPPropSigIsMySig is a convenience property for determining whether the certification was made by one of the caller's own private keys. This will yield TRUE only if the signing key is in the same base key set as the certification. If the signing key is suspected to be in a different base key set, then use the following code:

```
PGPGetSigCertifierKey( certset, signerset, &key );
PGPGetKeyBoolean( key, kPGPKeyPropIsSecret, &secret );
if ( secret )
{
    /* signing key is one of the caller's private keys */
}
else
{
    /* signing key is not one of the caller's private keys */
}
```

Table 2-7: Key ID String Type Specification Values.

| Key ID String Type Constants |
|------------------------------|
| kPGPKeyIDString_Abbreviated |
| kPGPKeyIDString_Full |

Table 2-8a: Valid PGPOptionListRef Options for Key Generation Functions.

| Option Function | PGPGetKeyEntropyNeeded | PGPGenerateKey | PGPGenerateSubKey |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| PGPOAdditionalRecipientRequestKeySet | | ● | |
| PGPOAllocatedOutputBuffer | | | |
| PGPOAppendOutput | | | |
| PGPOArmorOutput | | | |
| PGPOAskUserForEntropy | | | |
| PGPOCipherAlgorithm | | | |
| PGPOClearSign | | | |
| PGPOCommentString | | | |
| PGPOCompression | | | |
| PGPOConventionalEncrypt | | | |
| PGPODataIsASCII | | | |
| PGPODetachedSig | | | |
| PGPODiscardOutput | | | |
| PGPOEncryptToKey | | | |
| PGPOEncryptToKeySet | | | |
| PGPOEncryptToUserID | | | |
| PGPOEventHandler | | ● | ● |
| PGPOExpiration | | ● | ● |
| PGPOExportable | | | |
| PGPOExportPrivateKeys | | | |
| PGPOFailBelowValidity | | | |
| PGPOForYourEyesOnly | | | |
| PGPOHashAlgorithm | | | |
| PGPOImportKeysTo | | | |
| PGPOInputBuffer | | | |
| PGPOInputFile | | | |
| PGPOInputFileFSSpec | | | |
| PGPOKeyGenFast | ● | ● | ● |
| PGPOKeyGenMasterKey | | | ● |
| PGPOKeyGenName | | ● | |
| PGPOKeyGenParams | ● | ● | ● |
| PGPOKeySetRef | | ● | |
| PGPOLastOption | ● | ● | ● |
| PGPOLocalEncoding | | | |
| PGPNullOption | ● | ● | ● |

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|--|---|---|
| PGPOmitMIMEVersion | | | |
| PGPOOutputBuffer | | | |
| PGPOOutputFile | | | |
| PGPOOutputFileFSSpec | | | |
| PGPOOutputLineEndType | | | |
| PGPOPassphrase | | • | • |
| PGPOPassphraseBuffer | | • | • |
| PGPOPassThroughIfUnrecognized | | | |
| PGPOPgPMIMEEncoding | | | |
| PGPOPreferredAlgorithms | | • | |
| PGPORawPGPInput | | | |
| PGPOSendEventIfKeyFound | | | |
| PGPOSendNullEvents | | | |
| PGPOSignWithKey | | | |
| PGPOSigRegularExpression | | | |
| PGPOSigTrust | | | |
| PGPOVersionString | | | |
| PGPOWarnBelowValidity | | | |

Table 2-8b: Valid PGPOptionListRef Options for Key Generation (User ID) Functions.

| Option Function | PGPAddUserID | PGPSignUserID |
|--------------------------------------|--------------|---------------|
| PGPOAdditionalRecipientRequestKeySet | | |
| PGPOAllocatedOutputBuffer | | |
| PGPOAppendOutput | | |
| PGPOArmorOutput | | |
| PGPOAskUserForEntropy | | |
| PGPOCipherAlgorithm | | |
| PGPOClearSign | | |
| PGPOCommentString | | |
| PGPOCompression | | |
| PGPOConventionalEncrypt | | |
| PGPODataIsASCII | | |
| PGPODetachedSig | | |
| PGPODiscardOutput | | |
| PGPOEncryptToKey | | |
| PGPOEncryptToKeySet | | |
| PGPOEncryptToUserID | | |
| PGPOEventHandler | | |
| PGPOExpiration | | • |
| PGPOExportable | | • |
| PGPOExportPrivateKeys | | |
| PGPOFailBelowValidity | | |
| PGPOForYourEyesOnly | | |
| PGPOHashAlgorithm | | |
| PGPOImportKeysTo | | |
| PGPOInputBuffer | | |
| PGPOInputFile | | |
| PGPOInputFileFSSpec | | |
| PGPOKeyGenFast | | |
| PGPOKeyGenMasterKey | | |
| PGPOKeyGenName | | |
| PGPOKeyGenParams | | |
| PGPOKeySetRef | | |
| PGPOLastOption | • | • |
| PGPOLocalEncoding | | |
| PGPOnullOption | • | • |
| PGPOmitMIMEVersion | | |
| PGPOOutputBuffer | | |
| PGPOOutputFile | | |
| PGPOOutputFileFSSpec | | |
| PGPOOutputLineEndType | | |
| PGPOPassphrase | • | • |
| PGPOPassphraseBuffer | • | • |
| PGPOPassThroughIfUnrecognized | | |
| PGPOPgPMIMEEncoding | | |

| | | |
|--------------------------|--|---|
| PGPOPreferredAlgorithms | | |
| PGPORawPGPInput | | |
| PGPOSendEventIfKeyFound | | |
| PGPOSendNullEvents | | |
| PGPOSignWithKey | | |
| PGPOSigRegularExpression | | • |
| PGPOSigTrust | | • |
| PGPOVersionString | | |
| PGPOWarnBelowValidity | | |

Table 2-8c: Valid PGPOptionListRef Options for Key Revocation Functions.

| Option Function | PGPRevokeKey | PGPRevokeSubKey | PGPRevokeSig |
|--------------------------------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|
| PGPOAdditionalRecipientRequestKeySet | | | |
| PGPOAllocatedOutputBuffer | | | |
| PGPOAppendOutput | | | |
| PGPOArmorOutput | | | |
| PGPOAskUserForEntropy | | | |
| PGPOCipherAlgorithm | | | |
| PGPOClearSign | | | |
| PGPOCommentString | | | |
| PGPOCompression | | | |
| PGPOConventionalEncrypt | | | |
| PGPODataIsASCII | | | |
| PGPODetachedSig | | | |
| PGPODiscardOutput | | | |
| PGPOEncryptToKey | | | |
| PGPOEncryptToKeySet | | | |
| PGPOEncryptToUserID | | | |
| PGPOEventHandler | | | |
| PGPOExpiration | | | |
| PGPOExportable | | | |
| PGPOExportPrivateKeys | | | |
| PGPOFailBelowValidity | | | |
| PGPOForYourEyesOnly | | | |
| PGPOHashAlgorithm | | | |
| PGPOImportKeysTo | | | |
| PGPOInputBuffer | | | |
| PGPOInputFile | | | |
| PGPOInputFileFSSpec | | | |
| PGPOKeyGenFast | | | |
| PGPOKeyGenMasterKey | | | |
| PGPOKeyGenName | | | |
| PGPOKeyGenParams | | | |
| PGPOKeySetRef | | | |
| PGPOLastOption | • | • | • |
| PGPOLocalEncoding | | | |
| PGPONullOption | • | • | • |
| PGPOOmitMIMEVersion | | | |
| PGPOOutputBuffer | | | |
| PGPOOutputFile | | | |
| PGPOOutputFileFSSpec | | | |
| PGPOOutputLineEndType | | | |
| PGPOPassphrase | • | • | • |
| PGPOPassphraseBuffer | • | • | • |
| PGPOPassThroughIfUnrecognized | | | |
| PGPOPGPMIMEEncoding | | | |
| PGPOPreferredAlgorithms | | | |
| PGPORawPGPInput | | | |
| PGPOSendEventIfKeyFound | | | |
| PGPOSendNullEvents | | | |
| PGPOSignWithKey | | | |
| PGPOSigRegularExpression | | | |
| PGPOSigTrust | | | |
| PGPOVersionString | | | |
| PGPOWarnBelowValidity | | | |

Events and Callbacks

A number of the key management functions allow the calling application to request callbacks to track the progress of the operation. Those functions that permit inclusion of a `PGPOEventHandler` option generally execute so quickly that an event handler is of limited benefit unless the key set involved is very large. Those functions that include an explicit event handler argument generally require a perceptible amount of execution time, regardless of the size of the key set.

An event handler serves two purposes – it provides notification to the calling application that an event has occurred, and provides a mechanism for the calling application to affect processing (in a pre-defined manner). Notification includes a pointer to a `PGPEvent` data type that, depending on the type of event, provides detailed information about the cause of the event. The calling application can then respond appropriately, which may or may not intervene and affect the course of further processing. If the calling application wishes to intervene, then it can abort the job by returning an error code (a value other than `kPGPError_NoErr`). Additionally, depending on the type of event, it can modify the processing context by invoking `PGPAddJobOptions`.

All event handlers are declared as

```
PGPError myEvents( PGPContextRef pgpContext,
                  PGPEvent *event,
                  PGPUserValue userValue );
```

The `pgpContext` argument is the reference to the context of the function posting the event. The `event` argument references a `PGPEvent` data type as follows:

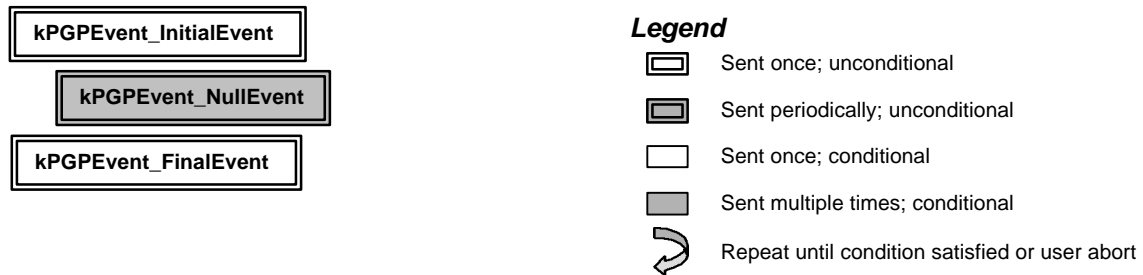
```
struct PGPEvent_
{
    PGPVersion          version;
    struct PGPEvent_    *nextEvent;
    PGPJobRef           job;
    PGPEventType        type;
    PGPEventData        data;
};
typedef struct PGPEvent_ PGPEvent;
```

The `version` and `nextEvent` members are currently reserved for internal use. The `job` member is not applicable to key management functions. The `type` member identifies the event being posted, and recognizes `kPGPEvent_...` values (see Table 3-1). The `data` member is a union of the event-specific data structures, which are described with their corresponding event.

None of the key management functions currently support modification of the processing context by invoking `PGPAddJobOptions`.

Figure 2-3: (Sub-)Key Generation Event Sequence.



Figure 2-4: Key Set Operation Event Sequence.

Key Management Events

kPGPEvent_InitialEvent

Sent before all other events. Implies entry to the function.

Data

None

Options

None

kPGPEvent_NullEvent

Sent during the course of key set import/export processing if explicitly requested with `PGPSENDNULLEVENTS` (see `PGPExportKeySet` and `PGPImportKeySet`). Automatically sent during signature checking (see `PGPCheckKeyRingSigs`).

The event data allows the PGPsdk developer to determine the sending function's progress by way of its completion percentage. The event data members should be treated as relative, unscaled quantities – they are not necessarily byte quantities or number-of-keys values. In all cases, the completion percentage is calculated as follows:

```
double      completionPercent;

if ( event->type = kPGPEvent_NullEvent )
{
    if ( event->nullData.bytesTotal != 0 )
    {
        completionPercent = ( 100 * event->nullData.bytesWritten ) /
                               event->nullData.bytesTotal;
    }
    else
    {
        completionPercent = 100;
    }
}
```

Data

```
typedef struct PGPEventNullData_
```



```
{
    PGPOffset      bytesWritten;
    PGPOffset      bytesTotal;
} PGPEventNullData;
```

Options

None

kPGPEvent_KeyGenEvent

Automatically sent during the course of key and sub-key generation (see `PGPGenerateKey` and `PGPGenerateSubKey`).

The event data allows the PGPSdk developer to determine the progress of the key generation process. If the event handler returns an error, then the key generation process aborts.

The `state` value indicates the *approximate* state of the key generation process, and assumes the *character* values that were used by previous text-versions of PGP:

- `.` selected value failed pseudo-primality test
- `/` all selected values failed pseudo-primality test; re-initializing the prime number generation environment
- `-` selected value passed pseudo-primality test; further processing required
- `+` selected value passed pseudo-primality test; further processing required
- `*` selected value passed pseudoprimality test; processing for this phase is near completion.
- *space* completion of this phase of (sub-)key generation. The actual number of phases varies from key to key, and has no fixed value or range

Data

```
typedef struct PGPEventKeyGenData_
{
    PGPUInt32      state;
} PGPEventKeyGenData;
```

Options

None

kPGPEvent_FinalEvent

Sent after all other events. Implies return from the function.

Data

None

Options

None

Key Set Functions

PGPOpenDefaultKeyRings

```
PGPError      PGPOpenDefaultKeyRings(
                PGPContextRef      pgpContext,
                PGPKeyRingOpenFlags
                                openFlags,
                PGPKeySetRef        *keySet );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|--|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| openFlags | the open options, which recognizes kPGPKeyRingOpenFlags_... values (see Table 2-1) |
| keySet | the receiving field for the new key set |

Description

Creates a key set that contains all of keys in the default public key and private key key rings. Any trust information associated with the public key ring is included.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key set with `PGPFreeKeySet`.

This is a convenience function that is the equivalent of

```
if (IsPGPError( err = PGPsdkPrefGetFileSpec ( pgpContext,
                                                kPGPsdkPref_PublicKeyring,
                                                &pubKeyFileSpec ) ) )
{
    return( err );
}
if (IsPGPError( PGPsdkPrefGetFileSpec ( pgpContext,
                                        kPGPsdkPref_PrivateKeyring,
                                        &privKeyFileSpec ) ) )
{
    return( err );
}

err = PGPOpenKeyRingPair( pgpContext,
                        openFlags,
                        pubFileSpec,
                        secFileSpec,
                        &keySet );

return( err );
```

Any `kPGPKeyRingOpenFlags_Private` or `kPGPKeyRingOpenFlags_Trusted` open options specification are ignored (debug versions, however, will assert; see `PGPGetFeatureFlags` and `kPGPFeatureMask_IsDebugBuild`).

PGPOpenKeyRingPair

```
PGPError      PGPOpenKeyRingPair(
                PGPContextRef      pgpContext ,
                PGPKeyRingOpenFlags
                                openFlags ,
                PGPFFileSpec      pubFileSpec ,
                PGPFFileSpec      secFileSpec ,
                PGPKeySetRef      *keySet );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|---|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| openFlags | the open option flags value |
| pubFileSpec | the target public key ring file |
| secFileSpec | the target private key ring file |
| keySet | the receiving field for the new key set |

Description

Creates a key set that contains all of the keys in the specified public and private key ring files. Any trust information associated with the public key ring are included.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

For most applications, PGPOpenDefaultKeyRings provides all the functionality required.

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key set with PGPFreeKeySet.

Any kPGPKeyRingOpenFlags_Private or kPGPKeyRingOpenFlags_Trusted open options specification are ignored (debug versions, however, will assert; see PGPGetFeatureFlags and kPGPFeatureMask_IsDebugBuild).

PGPOpenKeyRing

```
PGPError      PGPOpenKeyRing(
                PGPContextRef      pgpContext ,
                PGPKeyRingOpenFlags
                                openFlags ,
                PGPFFileSpec      fileSpec ,
                PGPKeySetRef      *keySet );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|---|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| openFlags | the open option flags value |
| fileSpec | the target key ring file |
| keySet | the receiving field for the new key set |

Description

Creates a key set that contains all of the keys in the specified key ring file. The open options are interpreted as follows:

- `kPGPKeyRingOpenFlags_Create` – TRUE if the specified key ring file should be created if it doesn't already exist.
- `kPGPKeyRingOpenFlags_Mutable` – TRUE if the resultant key set should be made modifiable; FALSE if the resultant key set should be made read-only.
- `kPGPKeyRingOpenFlags_Trusted` – TRUE if any associated trust information should be included.
- `kPGPKeyRingOpenFlags_Private` – TRUE if the specified key ring file should be considered private; FALSE if the specified key ring file should be considered public.

Errors

`kPGPError_FileNotFound`
`kPGPError_FileLocked`

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key set with `PGPFreeKeySet`.

`kPGPError_FileNotFound` will never be returned if the open options include `kPGPKeyRingOpenFlags_Create`.

PGPNewKeySet

```
PGPError      PGPNewKeySet (
                PGPContextRef  pgpContext,
                PGPKeySetRef    *keySet );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>keySet</code> | the receiving field for the new key set |

Description

Creates a new memory-based *key database*, as well as an empty key set on that key database.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key set with `PGPFreeKeySet`.

The current implementation treats the resultant key set as an indirect parameter that references a key database, rather than as an explicit destination.

The indirect nature of this interface is likely to change in a future version, and will almost certainly involve changes to this function's parameterization.

PGPNewEmptyKeySet

```
PGPError      PGPNewEmptyKeySet (
                PGPKeySetRef    baseKeySet,
                PGPKeySetRef    *newKeySet );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|---|
| baseKeySet | the source key set |
| newKeySet | the receiving field for the new key set |

Description

Creates a new, empty key set on the *key database associated with* the specified source key set.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key set with `PGPFreeKeySet`.

The current implementation treats the supplied key set as an indirect parameter that references a key database, rather than as an explicit source.

The indirect nature of this interface is likely to change in a future version, and will almost certainly involve changes to this function's parameterization.

PGPNewSingletonKeySet

```
PGPError      PGPNewSingletonKeySet(  
                PGPPKeyRef      key,  
                PGPPKeySetRef    *keySet );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|---|
| key | the seed key |
| keySet | the receiving field for the new key set |

Description

Creates a key set that is *not associated with any key database*, and that contains only the specified seed key.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This function does *not* create a new key database; the resultant key set contains only the one key.

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key set with `PGPFreeKeySet`.

PGPUnionKeySets

```
PGPError      PGPUnionKeySets(  
                PGPPKeySetRef    firstKeySet,  
                PGPPKeySetRef    secondKeySet,  
                PGPPKeySetRef    *resultKeySet );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>firstKeySet</code> | the first source key set |
| <code>secondKeySet</code> | the second source key set |
| <code>resultKeySet</code> | the receiving field for the new key set |

Description

Creates a new key set that is the union of the two source key sets

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The two source key sets must be in the same key database.

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key set with `PGPFreeKeySet`.

PGPFreeKeySet

```
PGPError      PGPFreeKeySet(
                PGPKKeySetRef    keySet );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| <code>keySet</code> | the target key set |
|---------------------|--------------------|

Description

Decrements the reference count for the specified key set, and frees the key set if the reference count reaches zero.

PGPReloadKeyRings

```
PGPError      PGPReloadKeyRings(
                PGPKKeySetRef    keySet );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| <code>keySet</code> | the target key set |
|---------------------|--------------------|

Description

Forcibly re-establishes the *key database associated with* the specified key set from the key database source files.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The current implementation treats the target key set as an indirect parameter that references a key database, rather than as an explicit destination.

The indirect nature of this interface is likely to change in a future version, and will almost certainly involve changes to this function's parameterization.

PGPImportKeySet

```
PGPError      PGPImportKeySet(
                PGPCContextRef    pgpContext,
                PGPKKeySetRef      keySet,
```

```
PGPOptionListRef    firstOption,
    ...,
PGPOLastOption( void ) );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>keySet</code> | the target key set |
| <code>firstOption</code> | the initial option list instance |
| <code>...</code> | subsequent option list instances |
| <code>PGPOLastOption(void)</code> | must always appear as the final argument to terminate the argument list |

Description

Imports the specified keys from the input source specified in the options list, and merges them with the specified key set. By including an option that specifies sending null events, the PGPsdk developer can provide for tracking the progress of the function (see `PGPOSendNullEvents`).

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

One of `PGPOInputBuffer`, `PGPOInputFile`, and `PGPOInputFileFSSpec` is required to specify the key source file.

PGPExportKeySet

```
PGPError    PGPExportKeySet(
    PGPKKeySetRef    keySet,
    PGPOptionListRef    firstOption,
    ...,
    PGPOLastOption( void ) );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code>keySet</code> | the target key set |
| <code>firstOption</code> | the initial option list instance |
| <code>...</code> | subsequent option list instances |
| <code>PGPOLastOption(void)</code> | must always appear as the final argument to terminate the argument list |

Description

Exports the specified keys in the specified key set to the output destination specified in the options list. By including an option that specifies sending null events, the PGPsdk developer can provide for tracking the progress of the function (see `PGPOSendNullEvents`).

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

One of `PGPOAllocatedOutputBuffer`, `PGPOOutputBuffer`, `PGPOOutputFile`, and `PGPOOutputFileFSSpec` is required to specify an output destination for functions that accept this option.

Exporting a key set and then importing it back does not necessarily result in a key set identical to that which was initially exported. For example, if a key was signed as being non-exportable, then its signature data will be lost (see `PGPOExportable`).

PGPCountKeys

```
PGPError      PGPCountKeys(
                PGPPKeySetRef    keySet,
                PGPUInt32        *numKeys );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------|---------------------------------------|
| keySet | the target key set |
| numKeys | the receiving field for the key count |

Description

Retrieves the number of keys in the specified key set.

PGPKeySetIsMember

```
PGPBoolean    PGPKeySetIsMember(
                PGPPKeyRef        key,
                PGPPKeySetRef     keySet );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|--------------------|
| key | the target key |
| keySet | the target key set |

Description

Returns `TRUE` if the specified key is in the specified key set.

PGPKeySetIsMutable

```
PGPBoolean    PGPKeySetIsMutable(
                PGPPKeySetRef     keySet );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|--------------------|
| keySet | the target key set |
|--------|--------------------|

Description

Returns `TRUE` if the specified key set can be modified, that is if keys and their components (sub-keys, signatures, and user IDs) can be added to the key set, deleted from the key set, and have their properties changed in the key set.

PGPAddKeys

```
PGPError      PGPAddKeys(
                PGPPKeySetRef     keysToAdd,
                PGPPKeySetRef     keySet );
```


Arguments

| | |
|-----------|---|
| keysToAdd | the source key set, which contains the keys to be added |
| keySet | the target (“to be augmented”) key set |

Description

Copies all of the keys in the specified source key set to the *key database associated with the specified destination* (“to be augmented”) key set.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The current implementation treats the destination key set as an indirect parameter that references a key database, rather than as an explicit destination. Because of key filtering and the “live” nature of its resultant view-style key sets, the keys added by this function may appear in any key set based upon that key database, and further may or may not appear in the specified destination key set, depending upon its key filtering criteria.

The indirect nature of this interface is likely to change in a future version, and will almost certainly involve changes to this function’s parameterization.

PGPRemoveKeys

```
PGPError      PGPRemoveKeys(  
                PGPKKeySetRef      keysToRemove,  
                PGPKKeySetRef      keySet );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------|---|
| keysToremove | the source key set, which contains the keys to be removed |
| keySet | the target (“to be pruned”) key set |

Description

Removes each of the keys in the specified source key set from the *key database associated with the specified destination* (“to be pruned”) key set.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The current implementation treats the destination key set as an indirect parameter that references a key database, rather than as an explicit destination. Because of key filtering and the “live” nature of its resultant view-style key sets, the keys removed by this function may disappear from any key set based upon that key database, and further may or may not disappear from the specified destination key set, depending upon its key filtering criteria.

The indirect nature of this interface is likely to change in a future version, and will almost certainly involve changes to this function’s parameterization.

PGPCheckKeyRingSigs

```
PGPError      PGPCheckKeyRingSigs(  
                PGPKKeySetRef      keysToCheck,  
                PGPKKeySetRef      keysSigning,  
                PGPBoolean          checkAll,  
                PGPEventHandlerProcPtr  
                                eventHandler,
```

```
PGPUserValue      eventHandlerArg );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| <code>keysToCheck</code> | the target key set |
| <code>keysSigning</code> | the look-up key set that contains the signing keys |
| <code>checkAll</code> | TRUE to check all signatures; FALSE to check only those marked as being unchecked |
| <code>eventHandler</code> | event handler or (<code>PGPEventHandlerProcPtr</code>) NULL to ignore any and all events |
| <code>eventHandlerArg</code> | user-defined data, to be passed to the event handler (meaningful only in conjunction with <code>eventHandler</code>) |

Description

Checks all signatures (or only those marked unchecked) of each key in the *key database associated with* the target key set. Each signature is assumed to exist in the *key database associated with* the look-up key set, which is typically all of the client's default keys.

Events of type `kPGPEvent_NullEvent` are sent during the course of processing, and the PGPsdk developer can choose to handle them with the optional event handler.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This is a resource-intensive function, whose execution time can be quite lengthy.

The PGPsdk developer can choose to point the optional event handler to a function that implements a progress bar display, or anything else that the PGPsdk developer desires. `userValue` is passed to the event handler function, and has meaning only in conjunction with the event handler function (see the description for `kPGPEvent_NullEvent`).

Specify `eventHandlerArg` as (`PGPUserData`) 0 to indicate a dummy argument.

The current implementation treats the target and look-up key sets as indirect parameters that reference key databases, rather than as explicit destinations and sources. Because of key filtering and the "live" nature of its resultant view-style key sets, the keys modified as a result any action by the optional event handler may be reflected in any key set based upon that key database, and further may or may not be reflected in the specified destination key set, depending upon its key filtering criteria.

The indirect nature of this interface is likely to change in a future version, and will almost certainly involve changes to this function's parameterization.

PGPPropagateTrust

```
PGPError      PGPPropagateTrust(
                PGPKKeySetRef      keySet );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| <code>keySet</code> | the target key set |
|---------------------|--------------------|

Description

Propagates the **trust** information across the *key database associated with* the specified key set.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The current implementation treats the destination key set as an indirect parameter that references a key database, rather than as an explicit destination. Because of key filtering and the “live” nature of its resultant view-style key sets, the trust values propagated by this function may be reflected in any key set based upon that key database, and further may or may not be reflected in the specified destination key set, depending upon its key filtering criteria.

The indirect nature of this interface is likely to change in a future version, and will almost certainly involve changes to this function’s parameterization.

PGPKeySetNeedsCommit

```
PGPBoolean  PGPKeySetNeedsCommit(  
                                PGPKeySetRef      keySet );
```

Arguments

keySet the target key set

Description

Returns TRUE if there any changes pending for the *key database associated with* the target key set.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The current implementation treats the target key set as an indirect parameter that references a key database, rather than as an explicit destination.

The indirect nature of this interface is likely to change in a future version, and will almost certainly involve changes to this function’s parameterization.

PGPCommitKeyRingChanges

```
PGPError      PGPCommitKeyRingChanges(  
                                PGPKeySetRef      keySet );
```

Arguments

keySet the target key set

Description

Checks any signatures that are marked as unchecked, and re-propagates their trust model information and other attributes. It then writes any changes pending in the *key database associated with* the target key set to the disk file(s) upon which the key database is based.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Changes are only written to disk if and when the PGPSdk client calls this function.

The current implementation treats the target key set as an indirect parameter that references a key database, rather than as an explicit destination. Because of key filtering and the “live” nature of its resultant view-style key sets, any keys modified by this function may be reflected in any key set based upon that key database, and further may or may not be reflected in the specified destination key set, depending upon its key filtering criteria.

The indirect nature of this interface is likely to change in a future version, and will almost certainly involve changes to this function's parameterization.

PGPRevertKeyRingChanges

```
PGPError      PGPRevertKeyRingChanges(
                PGPKeySetRef      keySet );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|--------------------|
| keySet | the target key set |
|--------|--------------------|

Description

Undoes all changes made to the *key database associated with* the specified key set since it was last opened, or since it was last the target of a call to PGPRevertKeyRingChanges.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The current implementation treats the target key set as an indirect parameter that references a key database, rather than as an explicit destination.

The indirect nature of this interface is likely to change in a future version, and will almost certainly involve changes to this function's parameterization.

PGPOrderKeySet

```
PGPError      PGPOrderKeySet(
                PGPKeySetRef      keySet,
                PGPKeyOrdering     order,
                PGPKeyListRef      *keyList );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------|--|
| keySet | the target key set |
| order | the ordering criteria, which recognizes kPGP...Ordering values (see Table 2-2) |
| keyList | the receiving field for the resultant ordered key list |

Description

Creates a key list from the target key set with the specified ordering, suitable for iteration (see this chapter's section on key iterator functions)

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The PGPsdk supports only single-level ordering. For example, this function does not support creation of a key list ordered by expiration date within encryption key size.

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key set with PGPFreeKeyList.

PGPFreeKeyList

```
PGPError      PGPFreeKeyList(
                PGPKeyListRef      keySet );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|---------------------|
| keySet | the target key list |
|--------|---------------------|

Description

Decrements the reference count for the specified key list, and frees the key list if the reference count reaches zero.

KeyFilter Functions

PGPNewKeyCreationTimeFilter

```
PGPError      PGPNewKeyCreationTimeFilter(  
                PGPCContextRef      pgpContext ,  
                PGPTime              creationTime ,  
                PGPMatchCriterion    match ,  
                PGPFILTERRef         *outFilter );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------|---|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| creationTime | the desired creation time value |
| match | the match criterion, which recognizes kPGPMatch... values (see Table 2-3) |
| outFilter | the receiving field for the resultant key filter |

Description

Creates a key filter that will select those keys whose creation time meets the match criterion with respect to the specified creation time.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key filter with PGPFreeFilter.

PGPNewKeyDisabledFilter

```
PGPError      PGPNewKeyDisabledFilter(  
                PGPCContextRef      pgpContext ,  
                PGPBoolean           disabled ,  
                PGPFILTERRef         *outFilter );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|--|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| disabled | TRUE to match disabled keys; FALSE to match enabled keys |
| outFilter | the receiving field for the resultant key filter |

Description

Creates a key filter that will select for all disabled keys or for all enabled keys, depending on the value of the disabled argument.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key filter with `PGPFreeFilter`.

PGPNewKeyEncryptAlgorithmFilter

```
PGPError      PGPNewKeyEncryptAlgorithmFilter(
                PGPCContextRef      pgpContext,
                PGPPublicKeyAlgorithm
                                encryptAlgorithm,
                PGPFilterRef      *outFilter );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>encryptAlgorithm</code> | the desired public key encryption algorithm, which recognizes <code>kPGPPublicKeyAlgorithm_...</code> values (see Table 3-5) |
| <code>outFilter</code> | the receiving field for the resultant key filter |

Description

Creates a key filter that will select those keys that use the specified public key algorithm.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key filter with `PGPFreeFilter`.

It may be useful to first determine if the desired public key encryption algorithm is available (see `PGPGetIndexdPublicKeyAlgorithmInfo`).

PGPNewKeyEncryptKeySizeFilter

```
PGPError      PGPNewKeyEncryptKeySizeFilter(
                PGPCContextRef      pgpContext,
                PGPUInt32      keySize,
                PGPMatchCriterion  match,
                PGPFilterRef      *outFilter );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>keySize</code> | the desired number of bits in the encryption key |
| <code>match</code> | the match criterion, which recognizes <code>kPGPMatch_...</code> values (see Table 2-3) |
| <code>outFilter</code> | the receiving field for the resultant key filter |

Description

Creates a key filter that will select those keys whose encryption key size (in bits) meets the match criterion with respect to the specified encryption key size.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key filter with `PGPFreeFilter`.

PGPNewKeyExpirationTimeFilter

```
PGPError      PGPNewKeyExpirationTimeFilter(
                PGPCContextRef      pgpContext,
                PGPTime             expirationTime,
                PGPMatchCriterion    match,
                PGPFILTERRef         *outFilter );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------|---|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| expirationTime | the desired expiration time value |
| match | the match criterion, which recognizes kPGPMatch... values (see Table 2-3) |
| outFilter | the receiving field for the resultant key filter |

Description

Creates a key filter that will select those keys whose expiration time meets the match criterion with respect to the specified expiration time.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key filter with PGPFreeFilter.

PGPNewKeyFingerprintFilter

```
PGPError      PGPNewKeyFingerprintFilter(
                PGPCContextRef      pgpContext,
                void const           *fingerprint,
                PGPSize              fingerprintLength,
                PGPFILTERRef         *outFilter );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| fingerprint | the desired key fingerprint |
| fingerprintLength | the size of the desired fingerprint |
| outFilter | the receiving field for the resultant key filter |

Description

Creates a key filter that will select for those keys having the specified fingerprint.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key filter with PGPFreeFilter.

PGPNewKeyRevokedFilter

```
PGPError      PGPNewKeyRevokedFilter(
```

```
PGPContextRef    pgpContext,
PGPBoolean       revoked,
PGPFilterRef     *outFilter );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|--|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| revoked | TRUE to match revoked keys; FALSE to match non-revoked keys |
| outFilter | the receiving field for the resultant key filter |

Description

Creates a key filter that will select for all revoked keys or for all non-revoked keys, depending on the value of the `revoked` argument.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key filter with `PGPFreeFilter`.

PGPNewSubKeyIDFilter

```
PGPError          PGPNewSubKeyIDFilter(
                    PGPContextRef    pgpContext,
                    PGPConstKeyIDRef subKeyID,
                    PGPFilterRef     *outFilter );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|--|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| subKeyID | the desired sub-key ID |
| outFilter | the receiving field for the resultant key filter |

Description

Creates a key filter that will select for the specified sub-key ID.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key filter with `PGPFreeFilter`.

PGPNewUserIDEmailFilter

```
PGPError          PGPNewUserIDEmailFilter(
                    PGPContextRef    pgpContext,
                    char const       *emailString,
                    PGPMatchCriterion match,
                    PGPFilterRef     *outFilter );
```


Arguments

| | |
|-------------|---|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| emailString | the desired user e-mail address |
| match | the match criterion, which recognizes kPGPMatch... values (see Table 2-3) |
| outFilter | the receiving field for the resultant key filter |

Description

Creates a key filter that will select for keys whose user ID information contains the specified e-mail address.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The emailString argument length must not exceed kPGPMaxUserIDLength.

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key filter with PGPFreeFilter.

PGPNewUserIDNameFilter

```
PGPError      PGPNewUserIDNameFilter(  
                PGPContextRef      pgpContext,  
                char const         *nameString,  
                PGPMatchCriterion  match,  
                PGPFilterRef       *outFilter );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|---|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| nameString | the desired user name |
| match | the match criterion, which recognizes kPGPMatch... values (see Table 2-3) |
| outFilter | the receiving field for the resultant key filter |

Description

Creates a key filter that will select for keys whose user ID information contains the specified user name.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Currently, the function effects the comparison as a sub-string match, and assumes a match criteria value of kPGPMatchSubString.

The nameString argument length must not exceed kPGPMaxUserIDLength.

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key filter with PGPFreeFilter.

PGPNewUserIDStringFilter

```
PGPError      PGPNewUserIDStringFilter(  
                PGPContextRef      pgpContext,  
                char const         *userIDString,  
                PGPMatchCriterion  match,
```

```
PGPFilterRef      *outFilter );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>userIDString</code> | the desired user ID |
| <code>match</code> | the match criterion, which recognizes <code>kPGPMatch...</code> values (see Table 2-3) |
| <code>outFilter</code> | the receiving field for the resultant key filter |

Description

Creates a key filter that will select for keys whose user ID information matches the specified data string.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Currently, the function effects the comparison on the entire string, and assumes a match criteria value of `kPGPMatchEqual`.

The `userIDString` argument length must not exceed `kPGPMaxUserIDLength`.

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key filter with `PGPFreeFilter`.

PGPNewKeySigAlgorithmFilter

```
PGPError      PGPNewKeySigAlgorithmFilter(
                PGPContextRef      pgpContext ,
                PGPPublicKeyAlgorithm
                                sigAlgorithm,
                PGPFilterRef      *outFilter );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>sigAlgorithm</code> | the desired signature algorithm |
| <code>outFilter</code> | the receiving field for the resultant key filter |

Description

Creates a key filter that will select those keys using the specified signature algorithm.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key filter with `PGPFreeFilter`.

PGPNewKeySigKeySizeFilter

```
PGPError      PGPNewKeySigKeySizeFilter(
                PGPContextRef      pgpContext ,
                PGPUInt32      keySize,
                PGPMatchCriterion match,
                PGPFilterRef      *outFilter );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|---|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| keySize | the desired number of bits in the signature key |
| match | the match criterion, which recognizes kPGPMatch... values (see Table 2-3) |
| outFilter | the receiving field for the resultant key filter |

Description

Creates a key filter that will select those keys whose signature key size (in bits) meets the match criterion with respect to the specified signature key size.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key filter with `PGPFreeFilter`.

PGPNewSigKeyIDFilter

```
PGPError      PGPNewSigKeyIDFilter(  
                PGPCContextRef      pgpContext ,  
                PGPKKeyID const     *keyID ,  
                PGPFfilterRef        *outFilter );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|--|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| keyID | the desired signature key ID |
| outFilter | the receiving field for the resultant key filter |

Description

Creates a key filter that will select those keys that were signed by the key having the specified key ID.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key filter with `PGPFreeFilter`.

PGPNewKeyIDFilter

```
PGPError      PGPNewKeyIDFilter(  
                PGPCContextRef      pgpContext ,  
                PGPCConstKeyIDRef    keyID ,  
                PGPFfilterRef        *outFilter );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|--|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| keyID | the desired key ID |
| outFilter | the receiving field for the resultant key filter |

Description

Creates a key filter that will select for the specified key ID.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key filter with `PGPFreeFilter`.

PGPNegateFilter

```
PGPError      PGPNegateFilter(
                PGPFILTERREF filter,
                PGPFILTERREF *outFilter );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>filter</code> | the source key filter |
| <code>outFilter</code> | the receiving field for the resultant key filter |

Description

Creates a new key filter that will select those keys that the input key filter will not.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This function does *not* use copy semantics - the input key filter is freed, even if the function returns an error.

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key filter with `PGPFreeFilter`.

PGPIntersectFilters

```
PGPError      PGPIntersectFilters(
                PGPFILTERREF filter1,
                PGPFILTERREF filter2,
                PGPFILTERREF *outFilter );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>filter1</code> | the first source key filter |
| <code>filter2</code> | the second source key filter |
| <code>outFilter</code> | the receiving field for the resultant key filter |

Description

Creates a new key filter that is the logical intersection of the two input key filters. For example, for the resultant key filter to select an item, that item would have to be selectable by both of the input key filters.

Errors

`kPGPError_InconsistentFilterClasses`

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This function does *not* use copy semantics. The input key filters are freed, even if the function returns an error.

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant key filter with `PGPFreeFilter`.

PGPUnionFilters

```
PGPError      PGPUnionFilters(  
                PGPFILTERRef    filter1,  
                PGPFILTERRef    filter2,  
                PGPFILTERRef    *outFilter );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------|--|
| filter1 | first input key filter |
| filter2 | second input key filter |
| outFilter | the receiving field for the resultant key filter |

Description

Creates a key filter that is the logical union of the two input key filters. For example, for the resultant key filter to select an item, that item would have to be selectable by either of the input key filters.

Errors

kPGPError_InconsistentFilterClasses

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This function does *not* use copy semantics. The input key filters are freed, even if the function returns an error.

PGPFreeFilter

```
PGPError      PGPFreeFilter(  
                PGPFILTERRef    filter );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|-----------------------|
| filter | the target key filter |
|--------|-----------------------|

Description

Decrements the reference count for the specified key filter, and frees the key filter if the reference count reaches zero.

PGPFilterKeySet

```
PGPError      PGPFilterKeySet(  
                PGPKKeySetRef    origSet,  
                PGPFILTERRef    filter,  
                PGPKKeySetRef    *resultSet );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>origSet</code> | the source key set |
| <code>filter</code> | the target key filter |
| <code>resultSet</code> | the receiving field for resultant key set |

Description

Applies the specified key filter to the specified key set. This yields a resultant key set that contains all of the keys from the source key set that meet the key filter criteria.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The resultant key set may be empty.

PGPLDAPQueryFromFilter

```
PGPError      PGPLDAPQueryFromFilter(
                PGPFILTERREF filter,
                char          **queryOut );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| <code>filter</code> | the target key filter |
| <code>queryOut</code> | the receiving field for a pointer to the resultant LDAP key server format query string |

Description

Converts the key filter criteria to an LDAP key server format query string, which can then be passed to the key server for processing.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant query string with `PGPFreeData`.

PGPHKSQueryFromFilter

```
PGPError      PGPHKSQueryFromFilter(
                PGPFILTERREF filter,
                char          **queryOut );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| <code>filter</code> | the target key filter |
| <code>queryOut</code> | the receiving field for a pointer to the resultant HTTP key server format query string |

Description

Converts the key filter criteria to an HTTP key server format query string, which can then be passed to the key server for processing.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant query string with `PGPFreeData`.

A significant number of key filter options are not supported by HTTP key servers:

Key Iteration Functions

The PGPSdk includes support for passing through the keys in a key list or the sub-parts of an individual key. Note that whenever these functions return `kPGPError_EndOfIteration`, the caller should treat the iterator's value as being undefined.

PGPNewKeyIter

```
PGPError      PGPNewKeyIter(  
                PGPKKeyListRef    keySet,  
                PGPKKeyIterRef    *keyIter );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <code>keySet</code> | the list of keys on which to iterate |
| <code>keyIter</code> | the receiving field for the iterator |

Description

Creates an iterator on a list of keys.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

A key list may have any number of iterators associated with it.

The caller is responsible for freeing the iterator with `PGPFreeKeyIter`.

PGPCopyKeyIter

```
PGPError      PGPCopyKeyIter(  
                PGPKKeyIterRef    iterOrig,  
                PGPKKeyIterRef    *iterCopy );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| <code>iterOrig</code> | the source iterator |
| <code>iterCopy</code> | the receiving field for the copy of the iterator |

Description

Creates an exact copy of the source iterator, including its current index.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant iterator copy with `PGPFreeKeyIter`.

PGPFreeKeyIter

```
PGPError      PGPFreeKeyIter(  
                PGPKKeyIterRef    iter );
```

Arguments

`iter` the target iterator

Description

Decrements the reference count for the specified iterator, and frees the iterator if the reference count reaches zero.

PGPKeyIterIndex

```
PGPUInt32    PGPKeyIterIndex(
                PGPKeyIterRef    iter );
```

Arguments

`iter` the target iterator

Description

Returns the current index value of the specified iterator.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller should not infer anything based upon the returned index value.

PGPKeyIterKey

```
PGPError      PGPKeyIterKey(
                PGPKeyIterRef    iter,
                PGPKeyRef         *key );
```

Arguments

`iter` the target iterator
`key` the receiving field for the resultant key

Description

Yields the key associated with the current index value of the specified iterator.

Errors

`kPGPError_EndOfIteration`

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

`kPGPError_EndOfIteration` is only returned if the key has been deleted.

PGPKeyIterSubKey

```
PGPError      PGPKeyIterSubKey(
                PGPKeyIterRef    iter,
                PGPSubKeyRef      *subKey );
```


Arguments

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>iter</code> | the target iterator |
| <code>subKey</code> | the receiving field for the resultant sub-key |

Description

Yields the sub-key associated with the current index value of the specified iterator.

Errors

`kPGPError_EndOfIteration`

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

`kPGPError_EndOfIteration` is only returned if the sub-key has been deleted.

PGPKeyIterUserID

```
PGPError      PGPKeyIterUserID(  
                PGPKeyIterRef      iter,  
                PGPUserIDRef      *userID );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>iter</code> | the target iterator |
| <code>userID</code> | the receiving field for the resultant user ID |

Description

Yields the user ID associated with the current index value of the specified iterator.

Errors

`kPGPError_EndOfIteration`

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

`kPGPError_EndOfIteration` is only returned if the user ID has been deleted.

PGPKeyIterSig

```
PGPError      PGPKeyIterSig(  
                PGPKeyIterRef      iter,  
                PGPSigRef          *sig );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>iter</code> | the target iterator |
| <code>sig</code> | the receiving field for the resultant signature |

Description

Yields the signature associated with the current index value of the specified iterator.

Errors

`kPGPError_EndOfIteration`

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

`kPGPError_EndOfIteration` is only returned if the signature has been deleted.

PGPKeyIterMove

```
PGPError      PGPKeyIterMove(
                PGPKeyIterRef    iter,
                PGPInt32          relOffset,
                PGPKeyRef          *key );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>iter</code> | the target iterator |
| <code>relOffset</code> | the relative offset from the current position |
| <code>key</code> | the receiving field for the resultant key |

Description

Moves the specified iterator by the specified relative offset, and yields the resultant key. Negative offsets move the iterator towards the beginning of the list; positive offsets move the iterator towards the end of the list.

Errors

`kPGPError_EndOfIteration`

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

If `kPGPError_EndOfIteration` is returned, then `key` will be set to `(PGPKeyRef *)NULL`.

If `kPGPError_EndOfIteration` is returned, then the resultant key may have been deleted.

PGPKeyIterSeek

```
PGPInt32      PGPKeyIterSeek(
                PGPKeyIterRef    iter,
                PGPKeyRef          key );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| <code>iter</code> | the target iterator |
| <code>key</code> | key to match |

Description

Scans the key set associated with the iterator, and returns the index (zero-based) of the first key that matches the specified search-for key.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

If the specified search-for key is not found, then the iterator is forcibly reset to point to the first key in the list. This should only happen if the search-for key was removed.

PGPKeyIterNext

```
PGPError      PGPKeyIterNext(  
                PGPKeyIterRef      iter,  
                PGPKeyRef          *key );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>iter</code> | the target iterator |
| <code>key</code> | the receiving field for the resultant key |

Description

Moves the specified iterator forward by one, and yields the resultant key.

Errors

`kPGPError_EndOfIteration`

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This function is the equivalent of

```
PGPKeyIterMove( iter, 1, &key );
```

If `kPGPError_EndOfIteration` is returned, then `key` will be set to (`PGPKeyRef *`)`NULL`.

If `kPGPError_EndOfIteration` is returned, then the resultant key may have been deleted.

PGPKeyIterNextSubKey

```
PGPError      PGPKeyIterNextSubKey(  
                PGPKeyIterRef      iter,  
                PGPSubKeyRef        *subKey );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>iter</code> | the target iterator |
| <code>subKey</code> | the receiving field for the resultant sub-key |

Description

Moves the specified iterator forward by one, and yields the resultant sub-key associated with the current key.

Errors

`kPGPError_EndOfIteration`

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

If `kPGPError_EndOfIteration` is returned, then `subKey` will be set to (`PGPSubKeyRef *`)`NULL`.

If `kPGPError_EndOfIteration` is returned, then the resultant sub-key may have been removed.

PGPKeyIterNextUserID

```
PGPError      PGPKeyIterNextUserID(
                PGPKeyIterRef      iter,
                PGPUserIDRef        *userID );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>iter</code> | the target iterator |
| <code>userID</code> | the receiving field for the resultant <code>userID</code> |

Description

Moves the specified iterator forward by one, and yields the resultant user ID associated with the current key.

Errors

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <code>kPGPError_BadParams</code> | The current key has no associated user ID, or the associated user ID has been removed. |
| <code>kPGPError_EndOfIteration</code> | |

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

If `kPGPError_EndOfIteration` is returned, then `userID` will be set to `(PGPUserIDRef *)NULL`.

PGPKeyIterNextUIDSig

```
PGPError      PGPKeyIterNextUIDSig(
                PGPKeyIterRef      iter,
                PGPSigRef           *sig );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>iter</code> | the target iterator |
| <code>sig</code> | the receiving field for the resultant signature |

Description

Moves the specified iterator forward by one, and yields the resultant signature associated with the current user ID of the current key.

Errors

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <code>kPGPError_BadParams</code> | The current key has no associated user ID, or the associated user ID has been removed. |
| <code>kPGPError_EndOfIteration</code> | |

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

If `kPGPError_EndOfIteration` is returned, then `sig` will be set to `(PGPSigRef *)NULL`.

PGPKeyIterPrev

```
PGPError      PGPKeyIterPrev(  
                PGPKeyIterRef      iter,  
                PGPKeyRef          *key );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>iter</code> | the target iterator |
| <code>key</code> | the receiving field for the resultant key |

Description

Moves the specified iterator backward by one, and yields the resultant key.

Errors

`kPGPError_EndOfIteration`

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This function is the equivalent of

```
PGPKeyIterMove( iter, -1, &key );
```

If `kPGPError_EndOfIteration` is returned, then `key` will be set to (`PGPKeyRef *`)`NULL`.

If `kPGPError_EndOfIteration` is returned, then the resultant key may have been deleted.

PGPKeyIterPrevSubKey

```
PGPError      PGPKeyIterPrevSubKey(  
                PGPKeyIterRef      iter,  
                PGPKeyRef          *key );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>iter</code> | the target iterator |
| <code>key</code> | the receiving field for the resultant sub-key |

Description

Moves the specified iterator backward by one, and yields the resultant sub-key associated with the current key.

Errors

`kPGPError_EndOfIteration`

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

If `kPGPError_EndOfIteration` is returned, then the resultant sub-key may have been removed.

PGPKeyIterPrevUserID

```
PGPError      PGPKeyIterPrevUserID(
                PGPKeyIterRef      iter,
                PGPUserIDRef        *userID );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>iter</code> | the target iterator |
| <code>userID</code> | the receiving field for the resultant user ID |

Description

Moves the specified iterator forward by one, and yields the resultant user ID associated with the current key.

Errors

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <code>kPGPError_BadParams</code> | The current key has no associated user ID, or the associated user ID has been removed. |
| <code>kPGPError_EndOfIteration</code> | |

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

If `kPGPError_EndOfIteration` is returned, then `userID` will be set to `(PGPUserIDRef *)NULL`.

PGPKeyIterPrevUIDSig

```
PGPError      PGPKeyIterPrevUIDSig(
                PGPKeyIterRef      iter,
                PGPSigRef           *sig );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>iter</code> | the target iterator |
| <code>sig</code> | the receiving field for the resultant signature |

Description

Moves the specified iterator backward by one, and yields the resultant signature associated with the current user ID of the current key.

Errors

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <code>kPGPError_BadParams</code> | The current key has no associated user ID, or the associated user ID has been removed. |
| <code>kPGPError_EndOfIteration</code> | |

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

If `kPGPError_EndOfIteration` is returned, then `sig` will be set to `(PGPSigRef *)NULL`.

PGPKeyIterRewind

```
PGPError          PGPKeyIterRewind(  
                    PGPKeyIterRef      iter );
```

Arguments

`iter` the target iterator

Description

Resets the iterator such that a subsequent `PGPKeyIterNext` will yield the first key in the associated key list.

PGPKeyIterRewindSubKey

```
PGPError          PGPKeyIterRewindSubKey(  
                    PGPKeyIterRef      iter );
```

Arguments

`iter` the target iterator

Description

Resets the iterator such that a subsequent `PGPKeyIterNextSubKey` will yield first sub-key associated with the current key.

PGPKeyIterRewindUserID

```
PGPError          PGPKeyIterRewindUserID(  
                    PGPKeyIterRef      iter );
```

Arguments

`iter` the target iterator

Description

Resets the iterator such that a subsequent `PGPKeyIterNextUserID` will yield the first user ID associated with the key.

PGPKeyIterRewindUIDSig

```
PGPError          PGPKeyIterRewindUIDSig(  
                    PGPKeyIterRef      iter );
```

Arguments

`iter` the target iterator

Description

Resets the iterator such that a subsequent `PGPKeyIterNextUIDSig` will yield the first signature associated with the current user ID of the current key.

Key Reference Count Functions

The PGPsdk automatically tracks the number of data items pointing to a particular resource. For example, a given key set may be referenced by any number of key lists and/or key iterators. This not only results in a level of context independence, but also ensures that a resource's memory is released only when its last reference is deleted. The PGPsdk also provides functions to support manual adjustment of a data item's reference count.

PGPIncKeySetRefCount

```
PGPError      PGPIncKeySetRefCount(
                PGPKKeySetRef      keySet );
```

Arguments

keySet the target key set

Description

Increments the reference count of the specified key set. This provides a mechanism for manually incrementing the reference count should it be necessary.

PGPIncFilterRefCount

```
PGPError      PGPIncFilterRefCount(
                PGPFfilterRef      filter );
```

Arguments

filter the target key filter

Description

Increments the reference count of the specified key filter. This provides a mechanism for manually incrementing the reference count should it be necessary.

PGPIncKeyListRefCount

```
PGPError      PGPIncKeyListRefCount(
                PGPKKeyListRef     keySet );
```

Arguments

keySet the target key list

Description

Increments the reference count of the specified key list. This provides a mechanism for manually incrementing the reference count should it be necessary.

Key Manipulation Functions

PGPGenerateKey

```
PGPError      PGPGenerateKey(
                PGPCContextRef      pgpContext ,
                PGPKeyRef            *key,
                PGPOptionListRef     firstOption,
                ...,
                PGPOLastOption( void ) );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| key | the receiving field for the generated key |
| firstOption | the initial option list instance |
| ... | subsequent option list instances |
| PGPOLastOption(void) | must always appear as the final argument to terminate the argument list |

Description

Generates a new key according to the specified options.

Errors

kPGPError_OutOfEntropy

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Sufficient **entropy** must be available for this function to succeed.

The current implementation treats any destination key set specified with `PGPOKeySetRef` as an indirect parameter that references a key database, rather than as an explicit destination. Because of key filtering and the “live” nature of its resultant view-style key sets, the key generated by this function may appear in any key set based upon that key database, and further may or may not appear in the specified destination key set, depending upon its key filtering criteria.

The indirect nature of this interface is likely to change in a future version, and will almost certainly involve changes to this function’s parameterization.

PGPChangePassphrase

```
PGPError      PGPChangePassphrase(
                PGPKeyRef            key,
                char const            *oldphrase,
                char const            *newphrase );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------|-------------------------------|
| key | the target key |
| oldphrase | the current passphrase |
| newphrase | the new passphrase |

Description

Changes the passphrase for the specified key.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

If sub-key(s) exist, then their passphrases should first be changed via `PGPChangeSubKeyPassphrase`.

PGPEnableKey

```
PGPError      PGPEnableKey(
                PGPPKeyRef      key );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----|----------------|
| key | the target key |
|-----|----------------|

Description

Marks a key as enabled for encryption and signing.

PGPDisableKey

```
PGPError      PGPDisableKey(
                PGPPKeyRef      key );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----|----------------|
| key | the target key |
|-----|----------------|

Description

Marks a key as disabled for encryption and signing.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The target key is still enabled for decryption and verifying.

PGPRevokeKey

```
PGPError      PGPRevokeKey(
                PGPPKeyRef      key,
                PGPOptionListRef firstOption,
                ...,
                PGPOLastOption( void ) );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| key | the key to be revoked |
| firstOption | the initial option list instance |
| ... | subsequent option list instances |
| PGPOLastOption(void) | must always appear as the final argument to terminate the argument list |

Description

Revokes the specified key.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

In order to successfully revoke a key, its passphrase must be known. This implies that the function must minimally be passed a `PGPOPassphrase` or `PGPOPassphraseBuffer` option list instance.

Sample Code

```
err = PGPrevokeKey( pgpContext,
                    key,
                    PGPOPassphrase( pgpContext,
                                     "Please don't hardcode passphrases - EVER!" ),
                    PGPOLastOption( void ) );
```

PGPSetKeyAxiomatic

```
PGPError      PGPSetKeyAxiomatic(
                PGPKKeyRef      key,
                PGPBoolean      checkPassphrase,
                char const       *passphrase );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| key | the target key |
| checkPassphrase | TRUE if a passphrase is included and should be checked as being valid for the target key |
| passphrase | the assumed passphrase for the target key or NULL |

Description

Forces the specified key to be axiomatically trusted. If `checkPassphrase` is `TRUE`, then passphrase must be both non-NULL and valid for the specified key. See `PGPUnSetKeyAxiomatic`.

Errors

```
kPGPError_BadPassphrase
kPGPError_KeyExpired
kPGPError_KeyRevoked
kPGPError_ItemIsReadOnly
```

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The specified key must be enabled and mutable.

Unless the key has just been created, a passphrase should be required to set such an unconditional trust level.

Sample Code

```
err = PGPSetKeyAxiomatic( key1,
                          FALSE,
                          NULL );

err = PGPSetKeyAxiomatic( key2,
                          TRUE,
                          "Please don't hardcode passphrases - EVER!" );
```

PGPUnsetKeyAxiomatic

```
PGPError      PGPUnsetKeyAxiomatic(
                PGPPKeyRef          key );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----|----------------|
| key | the target key |
|-----|----------------|

Description

Removes the axiomatic trust from the specified key (see PGPSetKeyAxiomatic).

Errors

```
kPGPError_KeyExpired
kPGPError_KeyRevoked
kPGPError_ItemIsReadOnly
```

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The specified key must be enabled and mutable.

PGPSetKeyTrust

```
PGPError      PGPSetKeyTrust(
                PGPPKeyRef          key,
                PGPUInt32            trust );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------|--|
| key | the target key |
| trust | the desired trust level, which recognizes kPGPKeyTrust_... values (see Table 3-7a) |

Description

Set the trust level of the specified key to that specified.

Errors

```
kPGPError_KeyExpired
kPGPError_KeyRevoked
kPGPError_ItemIsReadOnly
```

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The specified key must be enabled and mutable.

kPGPKeyTrust_Undefined and kPGPKeyTrust_Ultimate may not be used as trust argument values.

PGPCompareKeys

```
PGPInt32      PGPCompareKeys(
                PGPKeyRef      key1,
                PGPKeyRef      key2,
                PGPKeyOrdering  order );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------|--|
| key1 | the first target key |
| key2 | the second target key |
| order | the ordering to be applied to the target keys, which recognizes kPGP...Ordering values (see Table 2-2) |

Description

Compares the specified keys according to the specified ordering, and returns -1, 0, or 1 depending on whether or not key1 is less than, equal to, or greater than key2.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

If the keys compare as equal with respect to the specified ordering, then the result reflects a comparison of their associated key IDs.

If both keys are found to be invalid, then the function returns 0 (zero).

PGPGenerateSubKey

```
PGPError      PGPGenerateSubKey(
                PGPContextRef  pgpContext,
                PGPSubKeyRef    *subkey,
                PGPOptionListRef firstOption,
                ...,
                PGPOLastOption( void ) );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| subkey | the receiving field for the generated sub-key |
| firstOption | the initial option list instance |
| ... | subsequent option list instances |
| PGPOLastOption(void) | must always appear as the final argument to terminate the argument list |

Description

Generates a new sub-key according to the specified options.

Errors

`kPGPError_OutOfEntropy`

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Enough entropy must be available for this function to succeed.

The current implementation treats any destination key set specified with `PGPOKeySetRef` as an indirect parameter that references a key database, rather than as an explicit destination. Because of key filtering and the “live” nature of its resultant view-style key sets, the sub-key generated by this function may be reflected in any key set based upon that key database, and further may or may not be reflected in the specified destination key set, depending upon its key filtering criteria.

The indirect nature of this interface is likely to change in a future version, and will almost certainly involve changes to this function’s parameterization.

PGPRemoveSubKey

```
PGPError      PGPRemoveSubKey(
                PGPSubKeyRef      subkey );
```

Arguments

`subkey` the target sub-key

Description

Removes the specified sub-key from its associated key.

PGPChangeSubKeyPassphrase

```
PGPError      PGPChangeSubKeyPassphrase(
                PGPSubKeyRef      subkey,
                char const        *oldphrase,
                char const        *newphrase );
```

Arguments

`subkey` the target sub-key
`oldphrase` the current passphrase
`newphrase` the new passphrase

Description

Changes the passphrase for the specified sub-key.

PGPRevokeSubKey

```
PGPError      PGPRevokeSubKey(
                PGPSubKeyRef      subkey,
                PGPOptionListRef  firstOption,
                ...,
                PGPOLastOption( void ) );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| subkey | the target sub-key |
| firstOption | the initial option list instance |
| ... | subsequent option list instances |
| PGPOLastOption(void) | must always appear as the final argument to terminate the argument list |

Description

Revokes the specified sub-key.

PGPAddUserID

```
PGPError      PGPAddUserID(  
                PGPPKeyRef      key,  
                char const      *name,  
                PGPOptionListRef firstOption,  
                ...,  
                PGPOLastOption( void ) );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| key | the key to add the user ID to |
| name | a character string (the user ID) |
| firstOption | the initial option list instance |
| ... | subsequent option list instances |
| PGPOLastOption(void) | must always appear as the final argument to terminate the argument list |

Description

Creates an additional user ID for the specified key, and sets the user ID information to that specified.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The name argument length must not exceed kPGPMaxUserIDLength.

Keys may have multiple user IDs. The user ID added by this function will be put on the “bottom” of the list of user ID’s for this key.

PGPRemoveUserID

```
PGPError      PGPRemoveUserID(  
                PGPUIDRef      userID );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|--------------------|
| userID | the target user ID |
|--------|--------------------|

Description

Removes the specified user ID from its associated key.

PGPSetPrimaryUserID

```
PGPError      PGPSetPrimaryUserID(
                PGPUIDRef      userID );
```

Arguments

userID the target user ID

Description

Makes the specified user ID the primary user ID for its associated key.

Errors

```
kPGPError_KeyExpired
kPGPError_KeyRevoked
kPGPError_ItemIsReadOnly
```

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The specified key must be enabled and mutable.

PGPCompareUserIDStrings

```
PGPInt32      PGPCompareUserIDStrings(
                char const      *userIDString1,
                char const      *userIDString2 );
```

Arguments

userIDString1 the first target user ID string
 userIDString2 the second target user ID string

Description

Compares the specified user ID strings, and returns -1, 0, or 1 depending on whether or not userIDString2 is less than, equal to, or greater than userIDString1.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The userIDString_n arguments length must not exceed kPGPMaxUserIDLength.

If the user ID strings compare as equal, then the result reflects a comparison of the associated key IDs.

If either userIDString1 or userIDString2 is NULL, then the function returns 0 (zero).

PGPSignUserID

```
PGPError      PGPSignUserID(
                PGPUIDRef      userID,
                PGPKKeyRef      signingKey,
                PGPOptionListRef firstOption,
                ...,
```



```
PGPOLastOption( void ) );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| userID | the target user ID |
| signingKey | the desired signing key |
| firstOption | the initial option list instance |
| ... | subsequent option list instances |
| PGPOLastOption(void) | must always appear as the final argument to terminate the argument list |

Description

Signs the key associated with the specified user ID with the specified signing key. Available options include:

- PGPOPassphrase – specifies the passphrase required to unlock the target key
- PGPOPassphraseBuffer – specifies the passphrase required to unlock the target key
- PGPOExpiration – specifies the expiration date of the signature
- PGPOExportable – specifies whether or not the key component may be exported
- PGPOSigTrust – specifies the trust level of the signature, which recognizes kPGPNameTrust_... values (see Table 3-7b)
- PGPOSigRegularExpression

Errors

```
kPGPError_KeyExpired
kPGPError_KeyRevoked
kPGPError_ItemIsReadOnly
```

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The specified key must be enabled and mutable.

Only one of PGPOPassphrase and PGPOPassphraseBuffer is allowed.

Sample Code

```
err = PGPSignUserID( userID,
                    signingKey,
                    PGPOptionPassPhraseBuffer( pgpContext,
                                                &ppBuf,
                                                ppBufCount );
                    PGPOExpiration( pgpContext,
                                    ( 180 * ( 24 * 60 * 60 ) ) ),
                    PGPOLastOption( void ) );
```

PGPRemoveSig

```
PGPError PGPRemoveSig(
    PGPSigRef sig );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----|-----------------------------|
| sig | the signature to be removed |
|-----|-----------------------------|

Description

Removes the specified signature from its associated user ID of the associated key.

PGPRevokeSig

```
PGPError      PGPRevokeSig(
                PGPSigRef      sig,
                PGPKKeySetRef   keySet,
                PGPOptionListRef firstOption,
                ...,
                PGPOLastOption( void ) );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| sig | the target signature |
| keySet | the target key set |
| firstOption | the initial option list instance |
| ... | subsequent option list instances |
| PGPOLastOption(void) | must always appear as the final argument to terminate the argument list |

Description

Revokes the specified signature from all keys in the *key database associated with* the specified target key set.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The current implementation treats the destination key set as an indirect parameter that references a key database, rather than as an explicit destination. Because of key filtering and the “live” nature of its resultant view-style key sets, the signature revoked by this function may be reflected in any key set based upon that key database, and further may or may not be reflected in the specified destination key set, depending upon its key filtering criteria.

The indirect nature of this interface is likely to change in a future version, and will almost certainly involve changes to this function’s parameterization.

PGPCountAdditionalRecipientRequests

```
PGPError      PGPCountAdditionalRecipientRequests(
                PGPKKeyRef      baseKey,
                PGPUInt32        *numARRKeys );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|---|
| baseKey | the target key |
| numARRKeys | the receiving field for the resultant count |

Description

Provides the number of **additional recipient request keys** that are available for the specified base key.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Use this count as the upper limit when indexing through the available additional recipient keys (see the sample code for `PGPGetIndexedAdditionalRecipientRequest`).

PGPGetIndexedAdditionalRecipientRequest

```
PGPError      PGPGetIndexedAdditionalRecipientRequest(
                PGPKKeyRef      baseKey,
                PGPKKeySetRef    arrKeySet,
                PGPUInt32        index,
                PGPKKeyRef      *arrKey,
                PGPByte          *arrKeyClass );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|--|
| baseKey | the target key |
| arrKeySet | the look-up key set |
| index | the index (zero-based) of the desired additional recipient request key |
| arrKey | the receiving field for the n^{th} additional recipient request key |
| arrKeyClass | the receiving field for the class of the additional recipient request key |

Description

Provides a means of indexing through the available additional recipient request keys and retrieving each key and its class. All available additional recipient request keys are presumed to reside in the *key database associated with* the look-up key set.

Errors

```
kPGPError_ItemNotFound
kPGPError_OutOfRings
```

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The current implementation treats the look-up key set as an indirect parameter that references a key database, rather than as an explicit destination.

The indirect nature of this interface is likely to change in a future version, and will almost certainly involve changes to this function's parameterization.

Sample Code

```
PGPUInt32      index;
PGPUInt32      numARRKeys;
PGPError       err;
PGPKKeySetRef  arrKeySet;
```

```
PGPKeyRef      arrKey;
PGPByte        arrClass;

if ( IsPGPError( err = PGPCountAdditionalRecipientRequests( baseKey
                                                           &numARRKeys ) ) )
{
    return( err );
}

for ( index = 0,; index < numARRKeys; index++ )
{
    if ( IsPGPError( err = PGPGetIndexedAdditionalRecipientRequest( baseKey,
                                                                    arrKeySet,
                                                                    index,
                                                                    &arrKey
                                                                    &arrKeyClass ) ) )
    {
        return( err );
    }
    /*
    ** Process the ARRKeys
    */
}

if ( index >= numARRKeys )
{
    /*
    ** Being here means that there were no ARRKeys
    */
}

return( kPGPError_NoErr );
```

PGPGetKeyEntropyNeeded

```
PGPUInt32      PGPGetKeyEntropyNeeded(
                PGPContextRef      pgpContext,
                PGPOptionListRef    firstOption,
                ...,
                PGPOLastOption( void ) );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| firstOption | the initial option list instance |
| ... | subsequent option list instances |
| PGPOLastOption(void) | must always appear as the final argument to terminate the argument list |

Description

Returns the amount of entropy needed to generate a (sub-)key according to the specified key generation parameters (see PGPOKeyGenParams).

PGPGetSigCertifierKey

```
PGPError      PGPGetSigCertifierKey(
                PGPSigRef      sig,
                PGPKeySetRef    allKeys,
                PGPKeyRef       *sigKey );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------|--|
| sig | the target signature |
| allKeys | the target key set |
| sigKey | the receiving field for the key that signed the target signature |

Description

Searches the specified key set for the key that signed the specified signature.

Errors

kPGPError_ItemNotFound

PGPPassphraselsValid

```
PGPBoolean      PGPPassphraseIsValid(
                PGPKeySetRef    key,
                const char      *passphrase );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|-----------------------------------|
| key | the target key |
| passphrase | the assumed associated passphrase |

Description

Returns TRUE if the specified passphrase is valid for the specified key.

Get Property Functions

PGPGetHashAlgUsed

```
PGPError      PGPGetHashAlgUsed(
                PGPKeyRef      key,
                PGPHashAlgorithm *hashAlg );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------|---|
| key | the target key |
| hashAlg | the receiving field for the hash algorithm value, which recognizes kPGPHashAlgorithm_... values (see Table 3-3) |

Description

Obtains the hash algorithm associated with the target key.

PGPGetKeyBoolean

```
PGPError      PGPGetKeyBoolean(
                PGPKeyRef      key,
                PGPKeyPropName propName,
                PGPBoolean      *propData );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|--|
| key | the target key |
| propName | the name of the target property, which recognizes kPGPKeyProp... |
| propData | the receiving field for the target property value |

Description

Retrieves the value of the specified boolean property of the specified key.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

If RSA encryption is not available (for example, a version of the PGPsdk that supports only **Diffie-Hellman** encryption), then `propData` will be `FALSE` for both `kPGPKeyPropCanSign` and `kPGPKeyPropCanEncrypt`.

Sample Code

```
PGPBoolean      keyIsSecret;

err = PGPGetKeyBoolean( key,
                        kPGPKeyPropIsSecret,
                        &keyIsSecret );
if ( ( err == kPGPError_NoErr ) && ( keyIsSecret ) )
{
    /*
     ** Process secret key
     */
}
```

PGPGetKeyNumber

```
PGPError      PGPGetKeyNumber(
                PGPKeyRef      key,
                PGPKeyPropName propName,
                PGPUInt32      *propData );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|---|
| key | the target key |
| propName | the name of the desired property, which recognizes kPGPKeyProp... |
| propData | the receiving field for the desired property value |

Description

Retrieves the value of the specified numeric property of the specified key.

PGPGetKeyPropertyBuffer

```
PGPError      PGPGetKeyPropertyBuffer(
                PGPKeyRef      key,
                PGPKeyPropName  propName,
                PGPSize         availLength,
                void            *propData,
                PGPSize         *usedLength );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|--|
| key | the target key |
| propName | the name of the desired property, which recognizes kPGPKeyProp... values (see Table 2-4) |
| availLength | the length of the receiving field for the desired property data |
| propData | the receiving field for the desired property data |
| usedLength | the receiving field for the resultant length of the desired property data |

Description

Retrieves the arbitrary binary data associated with the specified property of the specified key.

Errors

kPGPError_BufferTooSmall

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

For a propName value of kPGPPropPreferredAlgorithm, a return value of kPGPError_NoErr with a resultant usedLength of zero indicates that no preferred algorithm is set.

Sample Code

```
PGPSize      usedLength;
PGPByte      keyPropBuffer[ 256 ];

err = PGPGetKeyNumber( key,
                      kPGPKeyPropPreferredAlgorithm,
                      (PGPSize)sizeof(keyPropBuffer),
                      &keyPropBuffer[ 0 ],
                      &usedLength );

if ( IsPGPError( err )
{
    return( err );
}

if ( usedLength == 0 )
{
    /*
     ** Handle no preferred algorithm set
     */
}
```

PGPGetKeyTime

```
PGPError      PGPGetKeyTime(
                PGPPKeyRef      key,
                PGPPKeyPropName propName,
                PGPTime          *propData );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|---|
| key | the target key |
| propName | the name of the desired property, which recognizes kPGPPKeyProp... values (see Table 2-4) |
| propData | the receiving field for the desired property value |

Description

Retrieves the value of the specified date/time property of the specified key.

PGPGetSubKeyBoolean

```
PGPError      PGPGetSubKeyBoolean(
                PGPSubKeyRef    subkey,
                PGPPKeyPropName propName,
                PGPPBoolean      *propData );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|---|
| subkey | the target sub-key |
| propName | the name of the desired property, which recognizes kPGPPKeyProp... values (see Table 2-4) |
| propData | the receiving field for the desired property data |

Description

Retrieves the value of the specified boolean property of the specified sub-key.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Keys and sub-keys share the same propName values.

PGPGetSubKeyNumber

```
PGPError      PGPGetSubKeyNumber(
                PGPSubKeyRef    subkey,
                PGPPKeyPropName propName,
                PGPUInt32        *propData );
```


Arguments

| | |
|----------|---|
| subkey | the target sub-key |
| propName | which property you want to retrieve, which recognizes kPGPKeyProp... values (see Table 2-4) |
| propData | the receiving field for the desired property |

Description

Retrieves the value of the specified numeric property of the specified sub-key.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Keys and sub-keys share the same propName values.

PGPGetSubKeyPropertyBuffer

```
PGPError      PGPGetSubKeyPropertyBuffer(
                PGPSubKeyRef      subkey,
                PGPKeyPropName    propName,
                PGPSize           availLength,
                void               *propData,
                PGPSize           *usedLength );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|--|
| subkey | the target sub-key |
| propName | the name of the desired property, which recognizes kPGPKeyProp... values (see Table 2-4) |
| availLength | the length of the receiving field for the desired property data |
| propData | the receiving field for the desired property data |
| usedLength | the receiving field for the resultant length of the desired property data |

Description

Retrieves the arbitrary binary data associated with the specified property of the specified sub-key.

Errors

kPGPError_BufferTooSmall

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Keys and sub-keys share the same propName values.

For a propName value of kPGPPropPreferredAlgorithm, a return value of kPGPError_NoErr with a resultant usedLength of zero indicates that no preferred algorithm is set.

PGPGetSubKeyTime

```
PGPError      PGPGetSubKeyTime(
                PGPSubKeyRef      subkey,
                PGPKeyPropName    propName,
                PGPTime           *propData );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|--|
| subkey | the target sub-key |
| propName | the name of the desired property, which recognizes kPGPKeyProp... values (see Table 2-4) |
| propData | the receiving field for the desired property value |

Description

Retrieves the value of the specified date/time property of the specified sub-key.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Keys and sub-keys share the same propName values.

PGPGetUserIDNumber

```
PGPError      PGPGetUserIDNumber(
                PGPUIDRef      userID,
                PGPUIDPropName propName,
                PGPUInt32      *propData );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|--|
| userID | the target user ID |
| propName | the name of the desired property, which recognizes kPGPUIDProp... values (see Table 2-5) |
| propData | the receiving field for the desired property value |

Description

Retrieves the value of the specified numeric property of the specified key.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Keys and sub-keys share the same propName values.

PGPGetUserIDStringBuffer

```
PGPError      PGPGetUserIDStringBuffer(
                PGPUIDRef      userID,
                PGPUIDPropName propName,
                PGPSize        availLength,
                char            *propString,
                PGPSize        *usedLength );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|---|
| userID | the target user ID |
| propName | the name of the desired property, which recognizes kPGPUserIDProp... values (see Table 2-5) |
| availLength | the length of the receiving field for the desired property data |
| propString | the receiving field for the desired property data |
| usedLength | the receiving field for the resultant length of the desired property data |

Description

Retrieves the C language string associated with the specified property of the specified user ID.

Errors

kPGPError_BufferTooSmall

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

propString should be a minimum of 256 bytes.

usedLength does *not* include the terminating NUL.

PGPGetSigBoolean

```
PGPError      PGPGetSigBoolean(  
                PGPSigRef      sig,  
                PGPSigPropName propName,  
                PGPBoolean      *propData );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|--|
| sig | the target signature |
| propName | the name of the desired property, which recognizes kPGPSigProp... values (see Table 2-6) |
| propData | the receiving field for the desired property data |

Description

Retrieves the value of the specified boolean property of the specified signature.

PGPGetSigNumber

```
PGPError      PGPGetSigNumber(  
                PGPSigRef      sig,  
                PGPSigPropName propName,  
                PGPUInt32      *propData );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| <code>sig</code> | the target signature |
| <code>propName</code> | the name of the desired property, which recognizes kPGPSigProp... values (see Table 2-6) |
| <code>propData</code> | the receiving field for the desired property data |

Description

Retrieves the value of the specified numeric property of the specified signature.

PGPGetSigTime

```
PGPError      PGPGetSigTime(
                PGPSigRef      sig,
                PGPSigPropName propName,
                PGPTime         *propData );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| <code>sig</code> | the target signature |
| <code>propName</code> | the name of the desired property, which recognizes kPGPSigProp... values (see Table 2-6) |
| <code>propData</code> | the receiving field for the desired property data |

Description

Retrieves the value of the specified date/time property of the specified signature.

Convenience Property Functions

The “convenience property functions” encapsulate code that

- creates an iterator on the associated item
- applies it to the specified key
- outputs the associated property value
- frees the iterator

PGPGetPrimaryUserID

```
PGPError      PGPGetPrimaryUserID(
                PGPKKeyRef      key,
                PGPUIDRef       *userID );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------|--|
| <code>key</code> | the target key |
| <code>userID</code> | the receiving field for the associated primary user ID |

Description

Obtains the primary user ID of the specified key.

PGPGetPrimaryUserIDNameBuffer

```
PGPError      PGPGetPrimaryUserIDNameBuffer(
                PGPKKeyRef      key,
                PGPSize          availLength,
                char              *nameBuf,
                PGPSize          *usedLength );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|---|
| key | the target key |
| availLength | the length of the receiving field for the associated primary user ID name |
| nameBuf | the receiving field for the associated primary user ID name |
| usedLength | the receiving field for the resultant length of the primary user ID name |

Description

Retrieves the primary user ID name associated with the specified key, which is assumed to be a C language string.

Errors

kPGPError_BufferTooSmall

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The nameBuf argument length must be at least (kPGPMaxUserIDLength + 1).
usedLength does *not* include the terminating NUL.

PGPGetPrimaryUserIDValidity

```
PGPError      PGPGetPrimaryUserIDValidity(
                PGPKKeyRef      key,
                PGPValidity      *validity );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|--|
| key | the target key |
| validity | the receiving field for the validity value associated with the user ID of the target key, which recognizes kPGPValidity_... values (see Table 3-8) |

Description

Obtains the validity of the primary user ID associated with the specified key.

Errors

kPGPError_ItemNotFound
kPGPValidity_Unknown

Default Private Key Functions

PGPSetDefaultPrivateKey

```
PGPError      PGPSetDefaultPrivateKey(
                PGPKeyRef      key );
```

Arguments

key the target key

Description

Sets the default private key (nominally used for signing) to the specified key.

Errors

```
kPGPError_KeyExpired
kPGPError_KeyRevoked
kPGPError_ItemIsReadOnly
```

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The target key must be a **secret key** (kPGPKeyPropIsSecret), and must be able to sign (kPGPKeyPropCanSign).

The target key is forced to be axiomatically trusted (no passphrase is required).

PGPGetDefaultPrivateKey

```
PGPError      PGPGetDefaultPrivateKey(
                PGPKeySetRef    keySet ,
                PGPKeyRef      *key );
```

Arguments

keySet the target key set
key the receiving field for the associated default private key

Description

Obtains the default private key, which is used for signing, for the *key database associated with* the specified key set.

Errors

```
kPGPError_ItemNotFound
```

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The current implementation treats the look-up key set as an indirect parameter that references a key database, rather than as an explicit destination.

The indirect nature of this interface is likely to change in a future version, and will almost certainly involve changes to this function's parameterization.

Key User-Defined Data Functions

The PGPSdk provides the PGPSdk developer with a mechanism by which arbitrary data may be associated with keys and key elements. This data is of type `PGPUserValue`, and can be used for housekeeping, as pointers to data structures, or for any other user-defined purpose. When a key is first imported, all of these values are initialized to zero. These values are not saved with the key - they are only valid while the key or key element is in-memory.

PGPSetKeyUserVal

```
PGPError      PGPSetKeyUserVal(  
                PGPSigRef      key,  
                PGPUserValue    userValue );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>key</code> | the key with which the user value will be associated |
| <code>userValue</code> | the user data |

Description

Associates a user-defined value or data structure with the specified key, provided that key is still in memory.

PGPSetSubKeyUserVal

```
PGPError      PGPSetSubKeyUserVal(  
                PGPSigRef      subkey,  
                PGPUserValue    userValue );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>subkey</code> | the sub-key with which the user value will be associated |
| <code>userValue</code> | the user data |

Description

Associates a user-defined value or data structure with the specified sub-key, provided that sub-key is still in memory.

PGPSetSigUserVal

```
PGPError      PGPSetSigUserVal(  
                PGPSigRef      sig,  
                PGPUserValue    userValue );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>sig</code> | the signature with which the user value will be associated |
| <code>userValue</code> | the user data |

Description

Associates a user-defined value or data structure with the specified signature, provided that signature is still in memory.

PGPSetUserIDUserVal

```
PGPError      PGPSetUserIDUserVal(
                PGPUIDRef      userID,
                PGPUserValue    userValue );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------|--|
| userID | the user ID with which the user value will be associated |
| userValue | the user data |

Description

Associates a user-defined value or data structure with the specified user ID, provided that user ID is still in memory.

PGPGetKeyUserVal

```
PGPError      PGPGetKeyUserVal(
                PGPKKeyRef      key,
                PGPUserValue     *userValue );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------|---------------------------------------|
| key | the target key |
| userValue | the receiving field for the user data |

Description

Obtains the user data associated with the specified key (if any), and places it into the specified field.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Any associated user data is always initialized to zeroes upon creation of a PGP data type instance.

PGPGetSubKeyUserVal

```
PGPError      PGPGetSubKeyUserVal(
                PGPSubKeyRef     subkey,
                PGPUserValue     *userValue );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------|---------------------------------------|
| subkey | the target sub-key |
| userValue | the receiving field for the user data |

Description

Obtains the user data associated with the specified sub-key (if any), and places it into the specified field.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Any associated user data is always initialized to zeroes upon creation of a PGP data type instance.

PGPGetSigUserVal

```
PGPError      PGPGetSigUserVal(  
                PGPSigRef      sig,  
                PGPUserValue    *userValue );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------|---------------------------------------|
| sig | the target signature |
| userValue | the receiving field for the user data |

Description

Obtains the user data associated with the specified signature (if any), and places it into the specified field.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Any associated user data is always initialized to zeroes upon creation of a PGP data type instance.

PGPGetUserIDUserVal

```
PGPError      PGPGetUserIDUserVal(  
                PGPUIDRef      userID,  
                PGPUserValue    *userValue );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------|---------------------------------------|
| userID | the target user ID |
| userValue | the receiving field for the user data |

Description

Obtains the user data associated with the specified User ID (if any), and places it into the specified field.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Any associated user data is always initialized to zeroes upon creation of a PGP data type instance.

KeyID Functions

PGPImportKeyID

```
PGPError      PGPImportKeyID(  
                void const      *data,
```

```
PGPKeyID          *keyID );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------|--|
| data | the key ID data to import |
| keyID | the receiving field for the resultant key ID |

Description

Imports the key ID.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

data must be in the format produced by `PGPExportKeyID`, and must reference a buffer of at least `kPGPMaxExportedKeyIDSize` bytes in length

PGPExportKeyID

```
PGPError          PGPExportKeyID(
                    PGPConstKeyIDRef  keyID,
                    PGPByte           exportedData[
                                    kPGPMaxExportedKeyIDSize ],
                    PGPSize           *exportedLength );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------|--|
| keyID | the key ID to be exported |
| exportedData | the receiving field for the exported key ID data |
| exportedLength | the receiving field for the resultant length of the exported key ID data |

Description

Exports the specified key ID.

PGPGetKeyIDString

```
PGPError          PGPGetKeyKeyIDString(
                    PGPConstKeyIDRef  keyID,
                    PGPKeyIDStringType type,
                    char               outString[
                                    kPGPMaxKeyIDStringSize ] );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------|---|
| keyID | the target key ID |
| type | the type of key ID string to return, which recognizes <code>kPGPKeyIDString_...</code> values (see Table 2-7) |
| outString | the receiving field for the associated key ID string |

Description

Retrieves the string associated with the specified key ID.

Errors

kPGPError_BufferTooSmall

PGPGetKeyIDFromString

```
PGPError      PGPGetKeyIDFromString(
                const char      *string,
                PGPKeyID        *keyID );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|--|
| string | the target string |
| keyID | the receiving field for the resultant key ID |

Description

Creates a key ID corresponding to the specified key string.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The string argument length must not exceed kPGPMaxKeyIDStringSize.

PGPGetKeyByKeyID

```
PGPError      PGPGetKeyByKeyID(
                PGPKeySetRef      keySet,
                PGPKeyID const    *keyID,
                PGPPublicKeyAlgorithm
                                pubKeyAlgorithm,
                PGPKeyRef         *key );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| keySet | the look-up key set |
| keyID | the target keyID |
| pubKeyAlgorithm | the public key algorithm used to generate the target keyID, which recognizes kPGPPublicKeyAlgorithm_... values (see Table 3-5) |
| key | the receiving field for the resultant key |

Description

Searches the *key database associated with* the specified key set for the key whose keyID and public key algorithm match those specified. This is especially useful for finding the keys of signing users.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Specifying the public key algorithm as kPGPPublicKeyAlgorithm_Invalid causes it to be ignored as a selection criteria.

The current implementation treats the look-up key set as an indirect parameter that references a key database, rather than as an explicit destination. Because of key filtering and the “live” nature of its resultant view-style key sets, the resultant key may or may not appear in the specified look-up key set, depending upon its key filtering criteria.

The indirect nature of this interface is likely to change in a future version, and will almost certainly involve changes to this function's parameterization.

Sample Code

```
PGPKeyID          keyID;
PGPKeyRef         key;
PGPInt32          tmpPubKeyAlg;
PGPPublicKeyAlgorithm pubKeyAlg;

if ( IsntPGPError( PGPGetKeyIDOfCertifier( sigRef, &keyID ) ) )
{
    PGPGetSigNumber( sigRef, kPGPSigPropAlgID, &tmpPubKeyAlg );
    pubKeyAlg = ( PGPPublicKeyAlgorithm )tmpPubKeyAlg;
    if ( IsntPGPError( PGPGetKeyByKeyID(allKeys, &keyID, pubKeyAlg, &key ) )
    {
        return( key );
    }
}
return( kPGPError_ItemNotFound );
```

PGPGetKeyIDFromKey

```
PGPError          PGPGetKeyIDFromKey(
                    PGPKeyRef         key,
                    PGPKeyID          *keyID );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------|--|
| key | the target key |
| keyID | the receiving field for the resultant key ID |

Description

Creates a key ID corresponding to the specified key.

PGPGetKeyIDFromSubKey

```
PGPError          PGPGetKeyIDFromSubKey(
                    PGPKeyRef         subkey,
                    PGPKeyID          *keyID );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|--|
| subkey | the target sub-key |
| keyID | the receiving field for the resultant key ID |

Description

Creates a key ID corresponding to the specified sub-key.

PGPGetKeyIDOfCertifier

```
PGPError          PGPGetKeyIDOfCertifier(
                    PGPSigRef         sig,
```

```
PGPKeyID *keyID );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------|--|
| sig | the target signature |
| keyID | the receiving field for the associated KeyID |

Description

Retrieves the KeyID of the specified signature.

PGPGetIndexedAdditionalRecipientRequestKeyID

```
PGPError PGPGetIndexedAdditionalRecipientRequestKeyID(
    PGPKeyRef baseKey,
    PGPUInt32 index,
    PGPKeyID *arrKeyID,
    PGPByte *arrKeyClass );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|---|
| baseKey | the target key |
| index | the index (zero-based) of the desired additional recipient request key |
| arrKeyID | the receiving field for the n^{th} additional recipient request key ID |
| arrKeyClass | the receiving field for the class of the n^{th} additional recipient request key |

Description

Provides a means of indexing through the available additional recipient request key, and retrieving each additional recipient request key ID and its class. The resultant key ID, however, may not be used to access the additional recipient request key directly since key ID values are not unique.

Errors

```
kPGPError_ItemNotFound
kPGPError_OutOfRings
```

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Either of arrKeyID and arrKeyClass may be NULL to indicate that the associated value should not be retrieved, but not both.

The class of the additional recipient request key is currently reserved for internal use, and the caller should not infer anything from its value.

Sample Code

(see the sample code for PGPGetIndexedAdditionalRecipientRequest)

PGPCompareKeyIDs

```
PGPInt32 PGPCompareKeyIDs(
    PGPConstKeyIDRef keyID1,
    PGPConstKeyIDRef keyID2 );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|--------|
| keyID1 | key ID |
| keyID2 | key ID |

Description

Compares the key IDs, and returns -1, 0, or 1 depending upon whether keyID1 is less than keyID2, keyID1 equals keyID2, or keyID1 is greater than keyID2.

Key Item Context Retrieval Functions

PGPGetKeySetContext

```
PGPContextRef    PGPGetKeySetContext(
                  PGPKeySetRef        keySet );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------|-------------------|
| keySet | the target keySet |
|--------|-------------------|

Description

Returns the context associated with the specified key set.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

If the specified key set is invalid, then the returned context reference value is set to kInvalidPGPContextRef.

PGPGetKeyListContext

```
PGPContextRef    PGPGetKeyListContext(
                  PGPKeyListRef       keyList );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------|---------------------|
| keyList | the target key list |
|---------|---------------------|

Description

Returns the context associated with the specified key list.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

If the specified key list is invalid, then the returned context reference value is set to kInvalidPGPContextRef.

PGPGetKeyIterContext

```
PGPContextRef    PGPGetKeyIterContext(
                  PGPKeyIterRef       keyIter );
```

Arguments

keyIter the target key iterator

Description

Returns the context associated with the specified key iterator.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

If the specified key iterator is invalid, then the returned context reference value is set to kInvalidPGPContextRef.

PGPGetKeyContext

```
PGPContextRef    PGPGetKeyContext (
                   PGPKeyRef            key );
```

Arguments

key the target key

Description

Returns the context associated with the specified key.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

If the specified key is invalid, then the returned context reference value is set to kInvalidPGPContextRef.

PGPGetSubKeyContext

```
PGPContextRef    PGPGetSubKeyContext (
                   PGPSubKeyRef        subKey );
```

Arguments

subKey the target sub-key

Description

Returns the context associated with the specified sub-key.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

If the specified sub-key is invalid, then the returned context reference value is set to kInvalidPGPContextRef.

PGPGetUserIDContext

```
PGPContextRef    PGPGetUserIDContext (
                   PGPUserIDRef        userID );
```

Arguments

`userID` the target user ID

Description

Returns the context associated with the specified user ID.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

If the specified user ID is invalid, then the returned context reference value is set to `kInvalidPGPContextRef`.

Chapter 3: Function Reference - Ciphering and Authentication Functions

Introduction

The PGPsdk provides high-level, algorithm-independent cryptographic functions for encrypting, decrypting, hashing, signing, and verifying messages and data. These not only free applications from having to be aware of the particular algorithm being used, but also allow new algorithms to be supported as they become available. Function prototypes are listed in the public header file `pgpEncode.h`. In most cases, inputs and outputs can be specified as any arbitrary combination of memory buffers and/or data files.

The PGPsdk also provides low-level cryptographic functions for developers who have special requirements, or require greater control over ciphering and authentication activities. Function prototypes are listed in the public header files `pgpCBC.h`, `pgpCFB.h`, `pgpHash.h`, `pgpPublicKey.h`, and `pgpSymmetricCipher.h`. `pgpCFB.h`, `pgpHash.h`, and `pgpSymmetricCipher.h` also appear as `#include` directives in `pgpEncode.h`, since the high-level functions are based on **cipher feedback mode** methodology.

Certain PGPsdk functions – most notably decryption and key generation (see Chapter 2) – require a significant amount of time to complete. To facilitate control and progress tracking, these functions support an event and callback mechanism. This same mechanism also provides for prompting of required information when required for example, file specifications, passphrases.

Header Files

```
pgpEncode.h
pgpCBC.h
pgpCFB.h
pgpHash.h
pgpPublicKey.h
pgpSymmetricCipher.h
```

Constants and Data Structures

Table 3-1: Event Type Values.

| Event Type Constant | Event Description |
|--|---|
| <code>kPGPEvent_NullEvent</code> | Progress notification |
| <code>kPGPEvent_InitialEvent</code> | Initial event |
| <code>kPGPEvent_FinalEvent</code> | Final event |
| <code>kPGPEvent_ErrorEvent</code> | An error occurred |
| <code>kPGPEvent_WarningEvent</code> | Warning event |
| <code>kPGPEvent_EntropyEvent</code> | More entropy is needed |
| <code>kPGPEvent_PassphraseEvent</code> | A passphrase is needed |
| <code>kPGPEvent_AnalyzeEvent</code> | Initial analysis event, before any output |
| <code>kPGPEvent_RecipientsEvent</code> | Recipient list report, before any output |
| <code>kPGPEvent_KeyFoundEvent</code> | Key packet found |
| <code>kPGPEvent_OutputEvent</code> | Output specification needed |

| | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| kPGPEvent_SignatureEvent | Signature status report |
| kPGPEvent_BeginLexEvent | Initial event per lexical unit |
| kPGPEvent_EndLexEvent | Final event per lexical unit |
| kPGPEvent_DetachedSignatureEvent | Need input for verification of detached signature |
| kPGPEvent_KeyGenEvent | Key generation progress |
| kPGPEvent_KeyServerEvent | Key server progress |
| kPGPEvent_KeyServerSignEvent | Key server passphrase |

Table 3-2: Lexical Section Type Values.

| Section Type Constant | Section Type Description |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| kPGPAnalyze_DetachedSignature | Detached signature |
| kPGPAnalyze_Encrypted | Encrypted message |
| kPGPAnalyze_Key | Key data |
| kPGPAnalyze_Signed | Signed message |
| kPGPAnalyze_Unknown | Non-PGP message |

Table 3-3: Hash Algorithm Selection Values.

| Hash Algorithm Constant |
|-----------------------------|
| kPGPHashAlgorithm_Invalid |
| kPGPHashAlgorithm_MD5 |
| kPGPHashAlgorithm_RIPEMD160 |
| kPGPHashAlgorithm_SHA |
| kPGPHashAlgorithm_SHADouble |

Table 3-4a: Symmetric Cipher Algorithm Selection Values.

| Symmetric Cipher Algorithm Constant |
|-------------------------------------|
| kPGPCipherAlgorithm_None |
| kPGPCipherAlgorithm_CAST5 |
| kPGPCipherAlgorithm_IDEA |
| kPGPCipherAlgorithm_3DES |

Table 3-4b: Symmetric Cipher Algorithm Key Size Values.

| Symmetric Cipher Algorithm | Key Size (Bits) | Key Size (Bytes) |
|----------------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| kPGPCipherAlgorithm_CAST5 | 128*** | 16 |
| kPGPCipherAlgorithm_IDEA | 128 | 16 |
| kPGPCipherAlgorithm_3DES | 192 | 24 |

***The PGPsdk does *not* support the **CAST** 40- and 80-bit key sizes, as these are considered to yield **cipher text** of less than acceptable cryptographic strength.

Table 3-5: Public Key Algorithm Selection Values.

| Public Key Algorithm Constant | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| kPGPPublicKeyAlgorithm_Invalid | |
| kPGPPublicKeyAlgorithm_ElGamal | (a.k.a.Diffie-Hellman) |
| kPGPPublicKeyAlgorithm_DSA | |
| kPGPPublicKeyAlgorithm_RSA | |
| kPGPPublicKeyAlgorithm_RSASignOnly | |
| kPGPPublicKeyAlgorithm_RSASignOnly | |

Table 3-6: Public Key Message Format Values

| Public Key Message Format Constant |
|------------------------------------|
| kPGPPublicKeyMessageFormat_PGP |
| kPGPPublicKeyMessageFormat_PKCS1 |

Table 3-7a: Key Trust Values.

| Trust Value Constant |
|------------------------|
| kPGPKeyTrust_Mask |
| kPGPKeyTrust_Undefined |
| kPGPKeyTrust_Unknown |
| kPGPKeyTrust_Never |
| kPGPKeyTrust_Marginal |
| kPGPKeyTrust_Complete |
| kPGPKeyTrust_Ultimate |

Table 3-7b: Name Trust Values.

| Trust Value Constant |
|-------------------------|
| kPGPNameTrust_Mask |
| kPGPNameTrust_Unknown |
| kPGPNameTrust_Untrusted |
| kPGPNameTrust_Marginal |
| kPGPNameTrust_Complete |

Table 3-8: Validity Level Values.

| Validity Level Constant |
|-------------------------|
| kPGPValidity_Unknown |
| kPGPValidity_Invalid |
| kPGPValidity_Marginal |
| kPGPValidity_Complete |

Table 3-9: Line Ending Option Values.

| Line Ending Option Constant |
|-----------------------------|
| kPGPLineEnd_CR |
| kPGPLineEnd_CRLF |
| kPGPLineEnd_Default |
| kPGPLineEnd_LF |

Table 3-10: Local Encoding Option Values.

| Local Encoding Constant |
|-----------------------------------|
| kPGPLocalEncoding_Auto*** |
| kPGPLocalEncoding_Force*** |
| kPGPLocalEncoding_NoMacBinCRCOkay |
| kPGPLocalEncoding_None |

***kPGPLocalEncoding_Force and kPGPLocalEncoding_Auto are mutually exclusive.

Table 3-11: Valid PGPOptionListRef Options for Ciphering and Authentication Functions.

| Option Function | PGPEncode | PGPDecode | PGPExportKeySet | PGPImportKeySet |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------|
| PGPOAdditionalRecipientRequestKeySet | | | | |
| PGPOAllocatedOutputBuffer | • | • | • | |
| PGPOAppendOutput | • | • | | |
| PGPOArmorOutput | • | | | |
| PGPOAskUserForEntropy | • | | | |
| PGPOCipherAlgorithm | • | | | |
| PGPOClearSign | • | | | |
| PGPOCommentString | • | | • | |
| PGPOCompression | • | | | |
| PGPOConventionalEncrypt | • | | | |
| PGPODataIsASCII | • | | | |

| | | | | |
|-------------------------------|---|---|---|---|
| PGPODetachedSig | • | • | | |
| PGPODiscardOutput | • | • | • | |
| PGPOEncryptToKey | • | | | |
| PGPOEncryptToKeySet | • | | | |
| PGPOEncryptToUserID | • | | | |
| PGPOEventHandler | • | • | • | • |
| PGPOExpiration | | | | |
| PGPOExportable | | | | |
| PGPOExportPrivateKeys | | | • | |
| PGPOFailBelowValidity | • | • | | |
| PGPOForYourEyesOnly | • | | | |
| PGPOHashAlgorithm | • | | | |
| PGPOImportKeysTo | | • | | |
| PGPOInputBuffer | • | • | | • |
| PGPOInputFile | • | • | | • |
| PGPOInputFileFSSpec | • | • | | • |
| PGPOKeyGenFast | | | | |
| PGPOKeyGenMasterKey | | | | |
| PGPOKeyGenName | | | | |
| PGPOKeyGenParams | | | | |
| PGPOKeySetRef | | • | | |
| PGPOLastOption | • | • | • | • |
| PGPOLocalEncoding | • | • | | • |
| PGPONullOption | • | • | • | • |
| PGPOOmitMIMEVersion | • | | | |
| PGPOOutputBuffer | • | • | • | |
| PGPOOutputFile | • | • | • | |
| PGPOOutputFileFSSpec | • | • | • | |
| PGPOOutputLineEndType | • | • | | |
| PGPOPassphrase | • | • | | |
| PGPOPassphraseBuffer | • | • | | |
| PGPOPassThroughIfUnrecognized | | • | | |
| PGPOPGMIMEEncoding | • | | | |
| PGPOPreferredAlgorithms | • | | | |
| PGPORawPGPInput | • | | | |
| PGPOSendEventIfKeyFound | | • | | |
| PGPOSendNullEvents | • | • | • | • |
| PGPOSignWithKey | • | | | |
| PGPOSigRegularExpression | | | | |
| PGPOSigTrust | | | | |
| PGPOVersionString | • | | • | |
| PGPOWarnBelowValidity | • | • | | |

Events and Callbacks

The `PGPOEventHandler` option allows the calling application to request callbacks when various events occur, and to define the function (event handler) that is the target of the callback. While an event handler is usually not needed for encryption operations, it is often needed for decryption operations.

An event handler serves two purposes – it provides notification to the calling application that an event has occurred, and provides a mechanism for the calling application to affect processing (in a pre-defined manner). Notification includes a pointer to a `PGPEvent` data type that, depending on the type of event, provides detailed information about the cause of the event. The calling application can then respond appropriately, which may or may not intervene and affect the course of further processing. If the calling application wishes to intervene, then it can abort the job by returning an error code (a value other than `kPGPError_NoErr`, except in the cases of `kPGPEvent_ErrorEvent` and `kPGPEvent_AnalyzeEvent`). Additionally, depending on the type of event, it can modify the processing context by invoking `PGPAddJobOptions`.

All event handlers are declared as

```
PGPError myEvents( PGPContextRef pgpContext,
```

```
PGPEvent *event,
PGPUserValue userValue );
```

The `pgpContext` argument is the reference to the context of the job posting the event. The `event` argument references a `PGPEvent` data type as follows:

```
struct PGPEvent_
{
    PGPVersion          version;
    struct PGPEvent_    *nextEvent;
    PGPJobRef           job;
    PGPEventType        type;
    PGPEventData        data;
};
typedef struct PGPEvent_ PGPEvent;
```

The `version` and `nextEvent` members are currently reserved for internal use. The `job` member references the currently active encode or decode activity. The `type` member identifies the event being posted, and recognizes `kPGPEvent_...` values (see Table 3-1). The `data` member is a union of the event-specific data structures, which are described with their corresponding event (some events have no associated event-specific data).

The calling application can modify the processing context by invoking `PGPAddJobOptions` as

```
PGPError PGPAddJobOptions( PGPJobRef job, ... );
```

The value of the `job` argument is that of the `PGPEvent` argument's `job` member. Additional `PGPOptionListRef` arguments are specified similarly to the way they are passed to `PGPEncode` and `PGPDecode`. However, only certain options can be set after each type of event, and these are listed for each event.

Figure 3-1: Encode Processing Event Sequence.

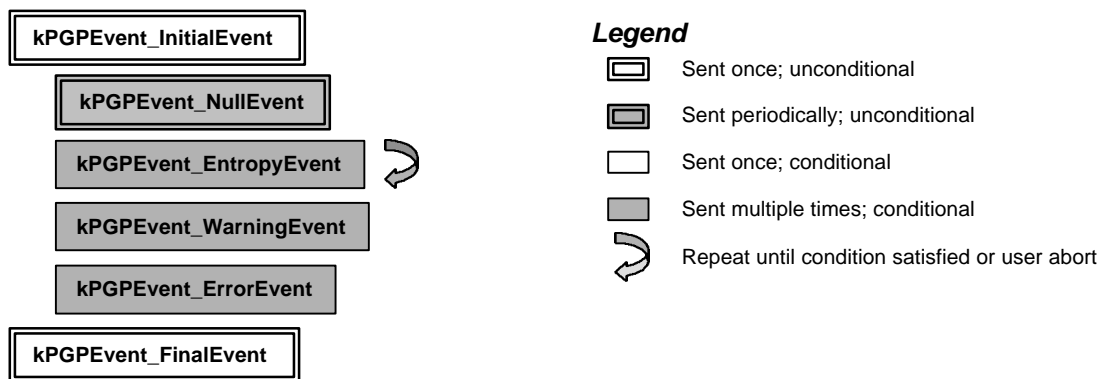
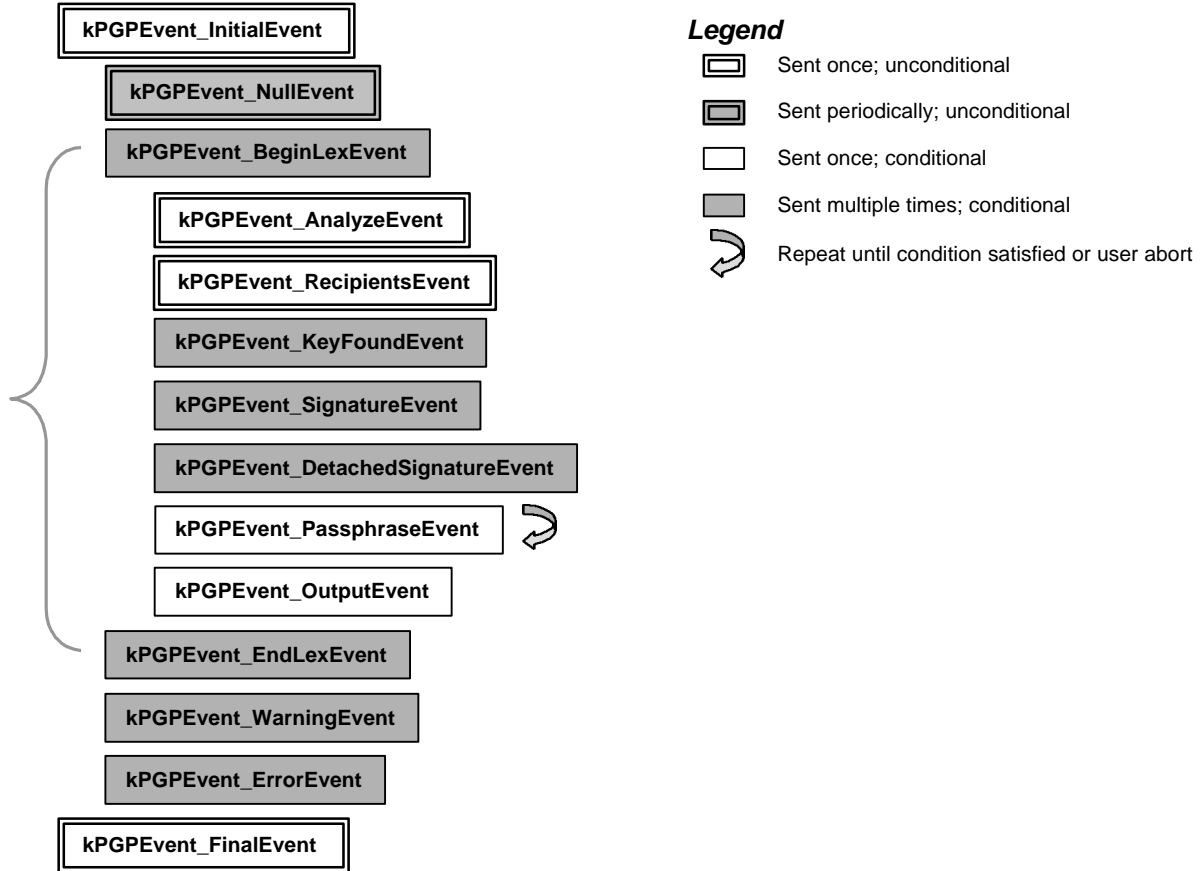


Figure 3-2: Decode Processing Event Sequence.



Common Cipher Events

kPGPEvent_InitialEvent

Sent before all other events. Implies initiation of the job.

Data

None

Options

None

kPGPEvent_NullEvent

Sent during the course of encode/decode processing if explicitly requested with `PGPOSendNullEvents` (see `PGPEncode` and `PGPDecode`).

The event data allows the PGPsdK developer to determine the sending function's progress and completion percentage. Its members should be treated as relative, unscaled quantities – they are not necessarily byte quantities. In all cases, the completion percentage is calculated as follows:

```
double    completionPercent;

if ( event->type = kPGPEvent_NullEvent )
{
    if ( event->nullData.bytesTotal != 0 )
    {
        completionPercent = ( 100 * event->nullData.bytesWritten ) /
                               event->nullData.bytesTotal;
    }
    else
    {
        completionPercent = 100;
    }
}
```

Progress tracking that involves compressed input files is rarely linear, since it tracks access of the compressed data, and not the decompression and processing of the resultant expanded data.

Data

```
typedef struct PGPEventNullData_
{
    PGPFileOffset    bytesWritten;
    PGPFileOffset    bytesTotal;
} PGPEventNullData;
```

Options

None

kPGPEvent_WarningEvent

Sent whenever a non-fatal error occurs during processing. The associated event data always includes the error code, and for certain warnings includes an error-specific argument. Unlike `kPGPEvent_ErrorEvent`, the value returned by the event handler is not ignored, and so a value other than `kPGPError_NoErr` will abort the job.

Data

```
typedef struct PGPEventWarningData_
{
    PGPError          warning;
    void              *warningArg;
} PGPEventWarningData;
```

Options

None

kPGPEvent_ErrorEvent

Sent whenever a fatal error occurs during processing. The associated event data always includes the error code, and for certain errors includes an error-specific argument. Upon return from the event handler, the job will always abort and return the initial error code – the value returned by the event handler is ignored.

Data

```
typedef struct PGPEventErrorData_
{
    PGPError      error;
    void          *errorArg;
} PGPEventErrorData;
```

Options

None

kPGPEvent_FinalEvent

Sent after all other events. Implies termination of the job.

Data

None

Options

None

PGPEncode-only Events**kPGPEvent_EntropyEvent**

Sent if more entropy is needed for signing or encrypting, and indicates the minimum number of entropy bits that the event handler should add to the random pool (see Chapter 5 for descriptions of the available random number pool management functions). For example:

```
while ( !PGPGlobalRandomPoolHasMinimumEntropy( void ) )
{
    PGPGlobalRandomPoolAddKeystroke( myGetKeystrokeFunction( void ) );
}
```

Data

```
typedef struct PGPEventEntropyData_
{
    PGPUInt32      entropyBitsNeeded;
} PGPEventEntropyData;
```

Options

None

PGPDecode-only Events**kPGPEvent_BeginLexEvent**

Sent whenever a new **lexical section** is encountered in the input. A lexical section is a block of data delimited by ---BEGIN PGP and ---END PGP (ASCII input; binary input has only one section). The zero-based `sectionNumber` value indicates which section has been encountered.

Data

```
typedef struct PGPEventBeginLexData_
{
    PGPUInt32      sectionNumber;
    PGPSize        sectionOffset;
} PGPEventBeginLexData;
```

Options

None

kPGPEvent_AnalyzeEvent

Sent immediately after a `BeginLexEvent` to identify the type of the current lexical section. This allows the event handler to decide if it should skip this lexical section, but not abort the whole job, by returning the special error value `kPGPError_SkipSection`.

`sectionType` recognizes `kPGPAnalyze_...` values (see Table 3-2).

Data

```
typedef struct PGPEventAnalyzeData_
{
    PGPAnalyzeType sectionType;
} PGPEventAnalyzeData;
```

Options

None

kPGPEvent_RecipientsEvent

Sent immediately after an `AnalyzeEvent` to describe the recipient(s) of the message. Generally, there can be three types of recipients:

- keys that are on the active key ring
- keys that are *not* on the active key ring
- conventional encryption passphrases

Determination of which keys are present is based upon a search of the key set specified in the `PGPOKeySetRef` option passed to `PGPDecode`. Generally, this key set will have resulted from opening the default key ring (see `PGPOpenDefaultKeyRings`, `PGPOpenKeyRing`, and `PGPOpenKeyRingPair`).

`recipientSet` identifies the set of keys required to decrypt the message, and which are currently available. `conventionalPassphraseCount` indicates how many different passphrases the message is encrypted to (typically zero or one). `keyCount` indicates the number of keys required to decrypt the message that are not currently available, and these are identified by `keyID` in the referenced `keyIDArray`.

Data

```
typedef struct PGPEventRecipientsData_
{
    PGPOKeySetRef    recipientSet;
    PGPUInt32        conventionalPassphraseCount;
    PGPUInt32        keyCount;
    PGPKeyID const   *keyIDArray;
```

```
} PGPEventRecipientsData;
```

Options

None

kPGPEvent_KeyFoundEvent

Sent whenever all of the following are TRUE:

- a key is found in the input data
- the PGPOImportKeysTo option was *not* specified, telling the job where to put the key
- the PGPOSendEventIfKeyFound option was specified

keySet holds the key found in the input data, and this key set is automatically freed upon return. The event handler code can process the key in anyway it sees fit, but will usually choose to merge the key into some key set (see PGPOAddKeys).

Data

```
typedef struct PGPEventKeyFoundData_
{
    PGPKeySetRef      keySet;
} PGPEventKeyFoundData;
```

Options

```
PGPOImportKeysTo
PGPOSendEventIfKeyFound(..., FALSE)
```

kPGPEvent_SignatureEvent

Sent for signed messages to provide information about the signature status.

signingKeyID always contains the key ID of the signing key. signingKey contains the signing key itself if it is on the local key ring.

The key validity flags increase monotonically, that is, if one is TRUE, then the flags preceding it must also be TRUE:

- checked indicates that the key is available, and that the message is properly formatted
- verified indicates that the signature validated correctly
- keyRevoked, keyDisabled, and keyExpired indicate that the signing key is no longer active
- keyValidity indicates the validity level of the signing key

The keyValidity flag is set based on the signing key's validity in relation to the thresholds set by the PGPODecode options PGPOWarnBelowValidity and PGPOFailBelowValidity.

creationTime indicates when the key was signed.

Data

```
typedef struct PGPEventSignatureData_
{
    PGPKeyID      signingKeyID;
    PGPKeyRef      signingKey;
    PGPBoolean     checked;
```

```
PGPBoolean    verified;
PGPBoolean    keyRevoked;
PGPBoolean    keyDisabled;
PGPBoolean    keyExpired;
PGPBoolean    keyMeetsValidityThreshold;
PGPValidity   keyValidity;
PGPTime       creationTime;
} PGPEventSignatureData;
```

Options

```
PGPOWarnBelowValidity
PGPOFailBelowValidity
```

kPGPEvent_DetachedSigEvent

Sent to notify the event handler that the input file contains a detached signature (a signature that is not attached to the file it signs). The event handler must provide an input source to be signature-checked against the detached signature. This can be any of the forms of input described among the options. The event handler should set a `PGPODetachedSig` option with the input data to be checked as a sub-option.

Data

None

Options

`PGPODetachedSig` with a sub-option of one of:

- `PGPOInputFile`
- `PGPOInputFSSpec` (MacOS platforms only)
- `PGPOInputBuffer`

kPGPEvent_PassphraseEvent

Sent if a passphrase is needed for decrypting (posted by `PGPDecode`), either to unlock a decryption key or to decrypt a conventionally encrypted message. The event handler should invoke `PGPAddJobOptions` specifying the `PGPOPassphrase` or `PGPOPassphraseBuffer` option, or return `kPGPError_UserAbort` if no passphrase is available.

If a passphrase is needed for a conventionally encrypted message, then the `fConventional` flag is `TRUE`, and `keyset` is ignored. Otherwise, `keyset` includes the key(s) for which a passphrase is needed.

If a passphrase is needed for decryption, then `keyset` will hold multiple keys if the message can be decrypted by multiple secret keys on the key ring. However, any passphrase which unlocks any of these secret keys is acceptable as a response.

This event is sent repeatedly until a valid passphrase is received, or until the event handler requests abort of the job. This allows the event handler to enforce a limit on the number of passphrase attempts.

Data

```
typedef struct PGPEventPassphraseData_
{
```

```

        PGPBoolean        fConventional;
        PGPKeySetRef       keyset;
    } PGPEventPassphraseData;

```

Options

```

PGPOPassphrase
PGPOPassphraseBuffer

```

kPGPEvent_OutputEvent

If the initial call to `PGPDecode` did not include an output specification option, then this event will be sent whenever a new section of the message is encountered. This allows the application total flexibility in routing each output section.

If the initial call to `PGPDecode` did include an output specification option, then this event will not be sent and all output will go to the specified location. However, keys are handled as described in `kPGPEvent_KeyFoundEvent`.

The `messageType` indicates whether the section is text, data, or non-PGP. The `suggestedName` argument specifies the name the encrypted or signed file had when it was encrypted. The `forYourEyesOnly` flag is `TRUE` if the encryption specified the `PGPOForYourEyesOnly` option.

The event handler should use this information to specify a processing option appropriate for the output of the section. These options include:

- write the output to a file
- write the output to a buffer
- discard the output

The event handler should return an error if it cannot set an output option.

Data

```

typedef struct PGPEventOutputData_
{
    PGPUInt32        messageType;
    char             *suggestedName;
    PGPBoolean        forYourEyesOnly;
} PGPEventOutputData;

```

Options

Write the output to a file:

- `PGPOOutputFile`
- `PGPOOutputFSSpec` (MacOS platforms only)
- `PGPOAppendOutput`

Write the output to a buffer:

- `PGPOAllocatedOutputBuffer`
- `PGPOOutputBuffer`
- `PGPOAppendOutput`

Discard the output:

- `PGPODiscardOutput`

kPGPEvent_EndLexEvent

Sent whenever a lexical section is completed (see the `BeginLexEvent` description for how sections are defined). The zero-based `sectionNumber` value indicates which section has been completed.

Data

```
typedef struct PGPEventEndLexData_
{
    PGPUInt32      sectionNumber;
} PGPEventEndLexData;
```

Options

None

Encode and Decode Functions

PGPEncode

```
PGPError      PGPEncode(
                PGPContextRef      pgpContext,
                PGPOptionListRef    firstOption,
                ...,
                PGPOLastOption( void ) );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>firstOption</code> | the initial option list instance |
| <code>...</code> | subsequent option list instances |
| <code>PGPOLastOption(void)</code> | must always appear as the final argument to terminate the argument list |

Description

Encrypts a block of text according to the target context and specified options.

Errors

```
kPGPError_RedundantOptions
kPGPError_KeyInvalid
kPGPError_KeyExpired
kPGPError_KeyDisabled
kPGPError_KeyRevoked
kPGPError_KeyUnusableForEncryption
kPGPError_KeyUnusableForSignature
kPGPError_MissingPassphrase
kPGPError_InconsistentEncryptionAlgorithms
kPGPError_CombinedConventionalAndPublicEncryption
kPGPError_NoInputOptions
kPGPError_MultipleInputOptions
kPGPError_InputFile
kPGPError_NoOutputOptions
```

```

kPGPError_MultipleOutputOptions
kPGPError_OutputBufferTooSmall
kPGPError_MissingEventHandler
kPGPError_MissingKeySet
kPGPError_TooManyARRKs

```

PGPDecode

```

PGPError      PGPDecode(
                PGPCContextRef      pgpContext,
                PGPOptionListRef     firstOption,
                ...,
                PGPOLastOption( void ) );

```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| firstOption | the initial option list instance |
| ... | subsequent option list instances |
| PGPOLastOption(void) | must always appear as the final argument to terminate the argument list |

Description

Decrypts a block of text according to the target context and specified options.

Errors

```

kPGPError_RedundantOptions
kPGPError_MissingPassphrase
kPGPError_DetachedSignatureFound
kPGPError_DetachedSignatureWithoutSigningKey
kPGPError_DetachedSignatureWithEncryption
kPGPError_NoInputOptions
kPGPError_MultipleInputOptions
kPGPError_InputFile
kPGPError_NoOutputOptions
kPGPError_MultipleOutputOptions
kPGPError_OutputBufferTooSmall
kPGPError_MissingEventHandler
kPGPError_MissingKeySet
kPGPError_NoDecryptionKeyFound
kPGPError_SkipSection

```

Low-Level Cipher Functions

PGPNewHashContext

```

PGPError      PGPNewHashContext(
                PGPCContextRef      pgpContext,
                PGPHashAlgorithm     algID,
                PGPHashContextRef    *hashContext );

```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>algID</code> | the hash algorithm to use, which recognizes <code>kPGPHashAlgorithm_...</code> values (see Table 3-3) |
| <code>hashContext</code> | the receiving field for the resultant hash context |

Description

Creates a new hash context that utilizes the specified algorithm.

Errors

`kPGPError_AlgorithmNotAvailable`

PGPCopyHashContext

```
PGPError      PGPCopyHashContext(  
                PGPHashContextRef  hashContextOrig,  
                PGPHashContextRef  *hashContextCopy );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code>hashContextOrig</code> | the source hash context |
| <code>hashContextCopy</code> | the receiving field for the copy of the hash context |

Description

Creates an exact copy of the source hash context.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant hash context copy with `PGPFreeHashContext`.

PGPFreeHashContext

```
PGPError      PGPFreeHashContext(  
                PGPHashContextRef  hashContext );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| <code>hashContext</code> | the target hash context |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|

Description

Frees the specified hash context.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Hash contexts do *not* have associated reference counts – the context is always deallocated.

PGPGetHashSize

```
PGPError      PGPGetHashSize(
                PGPHashContextRef hashContext,
                PGPSize             *hashSize );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| hashContext | the target hash context |
| hashSize | the receiving field for the hash size |

Description

Determines the resultant size of the associated hash in bytes, for example, a 160-bit hash may yield 20 bytes of resultant data.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Used for generic code that may not know the size of the hash being produced.

PGPContinueHash

```
PGPError      PGPContinueHash(
                PGPHashContextRef hashContext,
                const void          *hashIn,
                PGPSize             numBytes );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| hashContext | the target hash context |
| hashIn | the current hash data |
| numBytes | the length of the current hash data |

Description

Continues the hash, accumulating an intermediate result.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Normally, numBytes should be passed as the value received from PGPGetHashSize.

Sample Code

```
const void      *hashIn;
PGPSize         numBytes;

PGPGetHashSize( hashContext,
                &numBytes );
PGPContinueHash( hashContext,
                hashIn,
                numBytes );
```


PGPFinalizeHash

```
PGPError      PGPFinalizeHash(  
                PGPHashContextRef  hashContext,  
                void                *hashOut );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|--|
| hashContext | the target hash context |
| hashOut | the receiving buffer for the resultant hash data |

Description

Finalizes the hash, placing the result into `hashOut`. The hash context is then automatically reset via `PGPResetHash`.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Use `PGPGetHashSize` to ensure that the result buffer is of adequate size.

To obtain an intermediate result, use `PGPCopyHashContext` and then finalize the copy.

Sample Code

```
PGPError      err;  
PGPSize       hashSize;  
void          *hashOut;  
  
if ( !IsntPGPError( ( err = PGPGetHashSize( hashContext, &hashSize ) ) ) )  
{  
    hashOut = ( void * )malloc( hashSize );  
    if ( hashOut != ( void * )NULL )  
    {  
        err = PGPFinalizeHash( hashContext, hashOut );  
    }  
}  
return( err );
```

PGPResetHash

```
PGPError      PGPResetHash(  
                PGPHashContextRef  hashContext );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|-------------------------|
| hashContext | the target hash context |
|-------------|-------------------------|

Description

Resets a hash context as if it had been created anew. Any existing intermediate hash is lost.

PGPNewSymmetricCipherContext

```
PGPError      PGPNewSymmetricCipherContext(  
                PGPCipherContextRef  pgpContext,
```

```
PGPCipherAlgorithm algID,
PGPSize            keySize,
PGPSymmetricCipherContextRef
                    *cipherContext );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------|--|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| algID | the desired symmetric cipher algorithm, which recognizes kPGPCipherAlgorithm_... values (see Table 3-4a) |
| keySize | the desired key size (in bytes; see Table 3-4b) |
| cipherContext | the receiving field for the resultant symmetric cipher context |

Description

Creates a new symmetric cipher based upon the specified algorithm.

Errors

kPGPError_AlgorithmNotAvailable

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Currently, all supported symmetric cipher algorithms have only one key size. Specifying the key size as kPGPSymmetricCipherDefaultKeySize will not only simplify coding, but also avoid errors. This is especially true if the PGPsdk developer avoids any specification of key size, and instead always obtains the effective key size from PGPGetSymmetricCipherSizes.

The resultant symmetric cipher context cannot be used until it has been initialized with PGPInitSymmetricCipher.

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant symmetric cipher context with PGPFreeSymmetricCipherContext *unless* the copy is passed to a function which assumes ownership, for example PGPNewCBCCipherContext or PGPNewCFBCipherContext.

PGPInitSymmetricCipher

```
PGPError            PGPInitSymmetricCipher(
                    PGPSymmetricCipherContextRef
                                cipherContext,
                    const void    *key );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| cipherContext | the target symmetric cipher context |
| key | the desired key |

Description

Establishes the key for the symmetric cipher context.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The key size is determined by the choice of symmetric cipher, and may be obtained with PGPGetSymmetricCipherSizes.

Since the key is copied into the symmetric cipher context and so is no longer needed, the caller is strongly encouraged to clear the key's memory upon successful return.

A symmetric cipher can be repeatedly reset and reused with different keys, which avoids having to create and destroy new contexts each time.

PGPCopySymmetricCipherContext

```
PGPError      PGPCopySymmetricCipherContext(
                PGPSymmetricCipherContextRef
                                cipherContextOrig,
                PGPSymmetricCipherContextRef
                                *cipherContextCopy );
```

Arguments

`cipherContextOrig` the source symmetric cipher context
`cipherContextCopy` the receiving field for the copy of the symmetric cipher context

Description

Creates an exact copy of the source symmetric cipher context, including its key.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant symmetric cipher context copy with `PGPFreeSymmetricCipherContext` *unless* the copy is passed to a function which assumes ownership, for example `PGPNewCBCCipherContext` or `PGPNewCFBCipherContext`.

PGPFreeSymmetricCipherContext

```
PGPError      PGPFreeSymmetricCipherContext(
                PGPSymmetricCipherContextRef
                                cipherContext );
```

Arguments

`cipherContext` the target symmetric cipher context

Description

Frees the specified symmetric cipher context.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This function should only be called for those symmetric cipher contexts that are *not* passed to functions which assumes ownership, for example `PGPNewCBCCipherContext` or `PGPNewCFBCipherContext`.

Symmetric cipher contexts do *not* have associated reference counts – the context is always deallocated.

Before deallocating the context, the function erases all sensitive in-memory data.

PGPGetSymmetricCipherSizes

```
PGPError      PGPGetSymmetricCipherSizes(
                PGPSymmetricCipherContextRef
                                cipherContext,
                PGPSize          *keySize,
                PGPSize          *blockSize );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code>cipherContext</code> | the target symmetric cipher context |
| <code>keySize</code> | the receiving field for the associated cipher's key size (in bytes) |
| <code>blockSize</code> | the receiving field for the associated cipher's block size (in bytes) |

Description

Returns the key and block sizes (in bytes) for the associated symmetric cipher.

PGPSymmetricCipherEncrypt

```
PGPError      PGPSymmetricCipherEncrypt(
                PGPSymmetricCipherContextRef
                                cipherContext,
                const void      *plainText,
                void             *cipherText );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code>cipherContext</code> | the target symmetric cipher context |
| <code>plainText</code> | the source buffer for the input plain text |
| <code>cipherText</code> | the receiving buffer for the output cipher text |

Description

Encrypts one block of data, whose size is determined by the cipher (see `PGPGetSymmetricCipherBlockSize`).

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This function should not be used to encrypt multiple blocks of data unless the key is changed for each block (usually through a chaining or feedback scheme), since it is considered bad cryptographic practice to reuse a key in a block cipher.

PGPSymmetricCipherDecrypt

```
PGPError      PGPSymmetricCipherDecrypt(
                PGPSymmetricCipherContextRef
                                cipherContext,
                const void      *cipherText,
                void             *plainText );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| <code>cipherContext</code> | the target symmetric cipher context |
| <code>cipherText</code> | the source buffer for the input cipher text |
| <code>plainText</code> | the receiving buffer for the output plain text |

Description

Decrypts one block of data, whose size is determined by the target cipher context (see `PGPGetSymmetricCipherBlockSize`).

PGPWashSymmetricCipher

```
PGPError      PGPWashSymmetricCipher(  
                PGPSymmetricCipherContextRef  
                cipherContext,  
                void const *washData,  
                PGPSize      washLength );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <code>cipherContext</code> | the target symmetric cipher context |
| <code>washData</code> | the wash data |
| <code>washLength</code> | the length of the wash data |

Description

Hashes the current key of the specified symmetric cipher with the specified wash data to produce a new key.

PGPWipeSymmetricCipher

```
PGPError      PGPWipeSymmetricCipher(  
                PGPSymmetricCipherContextRef  
                cipherContext );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <code>cipherContext</code> | the target symmetric cipher context |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|

Description

Wipes any sensitive data in the cipher. The cipher context remains “alive”, but its key must be reset before any data can be encrypted.

PGPNewCBCContext

```
PGPError      PGPNewCBCContext(  
                PGPSymmetricCipherContextRef  
                cipherContext,  
                PGPCBCContextRef *chainingContext );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| <code>cipherContext</code> | the underlying symmetric cipher context |
| <code>chainingContext</code> | the receiving field for the resultant CBC context |

Description

Creates a **cipher block chaining** context based upon the specified symmetric cipher.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

A cipher block chaining context requires use of a symmetric cipher that has been created and whose key has been set. This key may be set explicitly with `PGPInitSymmetricCipher`, or set implicitly with `PGPInitCBC`.

Upon creation of the context, the `CBCRef` "owns" the symmetric `cipherContext` and will dispose of it properly (even if an error occurs). The caller should no longer reference it.

Sample Code

```
PGPError err;
PGPSymmetricCipherContextRef cipherContext;

PGPSize keySize;
PGPSize blockSize;
PGPBoolean didLock;
PGPCFBContextRef chainingContext;
void *key;
void *initVector;

if ( IsPGPError( err = PGPNewSymmetricCipherContext( pgpContext,
                                                    kPGPCipherAlgorithm_CAST5,
                                                    kPGPSymmetricCipherDefaultKeySize,
                                                    &cipherContext ) ) )
{
    return( err );
}

if ( IsPGPError( err = PGPGetSymmetricCipherSizes( cipherContext,
                                                    &keySize,
                                                    &blockSize ) ) )
{
    return( err );
}

/*
** Allocate "sensitive data" memory for the key buffer
*/
if ( ( key = PGPNewSecureData( pgpContext,
                              keySize,
                              &didLock ) ) == (void *)NULL )
{
    return( kPGPError_OutofMemory );
}

myKeySetFunction( key,
```

```
        keySize );
err = PGPInitSymmetricCipher( cipherContext,
                             ( const void * )key );

PGPFreeData( key );
if ( IsPGPError( err ) )
{
    return( err );
}

if ( IsPGPError( err = PGPNewCBCContext( cipherContext,
                                         &chainingContext ) ) )
{
    return( err );
}

if ( ( initVector = PGPNewSecureData( pgpContext,
                                     blockSize,
                                     &didLock ) ) == (void *)NULL )
{
    return( kPGPError_OutofMemory );
}

myInitVectorSetFunction( initVector,
                        blockSize );
err = PGPInitCFB( cipherContext,
                 (const void *)NULL,
                 initVector );
PGPFreeData( initVector );

if ( IsPGPError( err ) )
{
    return( err );
}

/*
** CBC encrypt/decrypt loop code...
*/
```

PGPInitCBC

```
PGPError      PGPInitCBC(
                PGPCBCContextRef  chainingContext,
                const void         *key,
                const void         *initializationVector );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <code>chainingContext</code> | the target CBC context |
| <code>key</code> | the desired key |
| <code>initializationVector</code> | the desired initialization vector data |

Description

Establishes the key and/or initialization vector for the cipher chaining context. One of `key` and `initializationVector` may be `NULL`, but not both.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The **initialization vector** (IV) size is assumed to be the same as the symmetric cipher block size.

Since both arguments are copied into the cipher chaining context, the caller is encouraged to clear their memory upon successful return.

Both `key` and `initializationVector` must be set prior to any cipher operations. However, as a convenience to the PGPsdk developer, these may be set in separate calls to `PGPInitCBC` and/or `PGPInitSymmetricCipher` since these values are commonly obtained from different sources at different times.

If the PGPsdk developer neglects to call `PGPInitCBC` to set the initialization vector (for example, always sets the key via `PGPInitSymmetricCipher`), then the initialization vector defaults to zeroes. Generally, it is better cryptographic practice to set the initialization vector to random data.

PGPCopyCBCContext

```
PGPError      PGPCopyCBCContext (
                PGPCBCContextRef  chainingContextOrig,
                PGPCBCContextRef  *chainingContextCopy );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <code>chainingContextOrig</code> | the source CBC context |
| <code>chainingContextCopy</code> | the receiving field for the copy of the CBC context |

Description

Creates an exact copy of the source chaining cipher context.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant chaining cipher context copy with `PGPFreeCBCCipherContext`.

PGPFreeCBCContext

```
PGPError      PGPFreeCBCContext (
                PGPCBCContextRef  chainingContext );
```


Arguments

chainingContext the target cipher block chaining context

Description

Decrements the reference count for the specified cipher block chaining context, and frees the context if the reference count reaches zero.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Before deallocating the context, the function erases all associated in-memory data.

PGPCBCEncrypt

```
PGPError      PGPCBCEncrypt (
                PGPCBCContextRef  chainingContext,
                const void         *plainText,
                PGPSize            plainTextLength,
                void                *cipherText );
```

Arguments

chainingContext the target CBC context
plainText the data to encrypt
plainTextLength the length of the data to encrypt (in bytes)
cipherText the receiving buffer for the resultant encrypted data

Description

Encrypts the specified data according to the specified cipher block chaining context.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Since cipher block chaining effectively changes the key for each block of plain text, PGPCBCEncrypt can be called repeatedly to encrypt arbitrary amounts of data.

Sample Code

```
PGPSymmetricCipherContext  cipherContext;
PGPSize                    keySize;
PGPSize                    blockSize;

if ( IsPGPError( err = PGPCBCGetSymmetricCipher( chainingContext,
                                                  &cipherContext ) ) )
{
    return( err );
}

if ( IsPGPError( err = PGPSGetSymmetricCipherSizes( cipherContext,
                                                    &keySize,
                                                    &blockSize ) ) )
{
    return( err );
}
```

```

while (plainTextLength >= blockSize )
{
    if ( IsPGPError( err = PGPCBCEncrypt( chainingContext,
                                           plainText,
                                           blockSize,
                                           cipherText ) ) )
    {
        return( err );
    }
    plainText += blockSize;
    cipherText += blockSize;
    plainTextLength -= blockSize;
}
if ( IsPGPError( err = PGPCBCDecrypt( chainingContext,
                                       plainText,
                                       plainTextLength,
                                       cipherText ) ) )
{
    return( err );
}

```

PGPCBCDecrypt

```

PGPError      PGPCBCDecrypt(
                PGPCBCContextRef  chainingContext,
                const void         *cipherText,
                PGPSize            cipherTextLength,
                void                *plainText );

```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------|---|
| chainingContext | the target CBC context |
| cipherText | the data to decrypt |
| cipherTextLength | the length of the data to decrypt (in bytes) |
| plainText | the receiving buffer for the resultant plain text |

Description

Decrypts the specified data according to the specified chaining context.

PGPCBCGetSymmetricCipher

```

PGPError      PGPCBCGetSymmetricCipher(
                PGPCBCContextRef  chainingContext,
                PGPSymmetricCipherContextRef
                *cipherContext );

```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code>chainingContext</code> | the target CBC context |
| <code>cipherContext</code> | the receiving field for the symmetric cipher context |

Description

Get the symmetric cipher context being used by the specified cipher block chaining context.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

`cipherContext` is the actual `PGPSymmetricCipherContext`, and *not* a copy. Since the chaining context “owns” the symmetric cipher, the caller should neither free nor dereference it, but may copy it.

Once obtained, the symmetric cipher reference can be used to obtain attributes of the underlying cipher, for example, its block size.

PGPNewCFBContext

```
PGPError          PGPNewCFBContext (
                    PGPSymmetricCipherContextRef
                                cipherContext,
                    PGPUInt16      interleaveFactor,
                    PGPCFBContextRef *feedbackContext );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <code>cipherContext</code> | the underlying symmetric cipher context |
| <code>interleaveFactor</code> | the desired number of cipher blocks in the feedback loop |
| <code>feedbackContext</code> | the receiving field for the resultant CFB context |

Description

Creates a new feedback context based upon the specified symmetric cipher. The specified interleave factor determines the number of cipher blocks through which the feedback mechanism will cycle.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

A cipher feedback context requires use of a symmetric cipher that has been created and whose key has been set. This key may be set explicitly with `PGPInitSymmetricCipher`, or set implicitly with `PGPInitCFB`.

After the call, the `CFBRef` “owns” the symmetric `cipherContext` and will dispose of it properly (even if an error occurs). The caller should no longer reference it.

The choice of interleave factor affects the size of the resultant feedback context, but does not affect its performance. However, while the PGPSdk API currently supports interleaving, it is not yet fully implemented. As such, the interleave factor should always be specified as one.

Sample Code

```
PGPError          err;
PGPSymmetricCipherContextRef
                    cipherContext;
PGPSize           keySize;
```

```

PGPSize          blockSize;
#define kMyCipherAlg      kPGPCipherAlgorithm_CAST5
/*
** The choice of key size must be compatible
** with the choice of cipher algorithm!
*/
#define kMyKeySize        ( ( PGPSize )64 ) /* Bits!      */
PGPCFBContextRef      feedbackContext;
#define kMyInterleaveFactor 1
void                  key[ ( ( kMyKeySize / 8 ) * kMyInterleaveFactor ) ];
void                  *initVector;

if ( IsPGPError( err = PGPNewSymmetricCipherContext( pgpContext,
                                                    kMyCipherAlg,
                                                    kMyKeySize,
                                                    &cipherContext ) ) )
{
    return( err );
}

if ( IsPGPError( err = PGPGetSymmetricCipherSizes( cipherContext,
                                                    &keySize,
                                                    &blockSize ) ) )
{
    return( err );
}

if ( IsPGPError( err = PGPNewCFBContext( cipherContext,
                                         kMyInterleaveFactor,
                                         &feedbackContext ) ) )
{
    return( err );
}

if ( ( initVector = PGPNewSecureData( pgpContext,
                                     ( blockSize * kMyInterleaveFactor ),
                                     &didLock ) ) == (void *)NULL )
{
    return( err );
}

myKeySetFunction( &key[ 0 ],
                 ( kMyKeyBitSize / (PGPSize)8 ),
                 kMyInterleaveFactor );
myInitVectorSetFunction( initVector,
                        ( blockSize * kMyInterleaveFactor ) );

if ( IsPGPError( err = PGPInitCFB( cipherContext,
                                   &key[ 0 ],
                                   &initVector ) ) )
myMemClearFunction( &key[ 0 ],
                   ( kMyKeyBitSize / (PGPSize)8 ),
                   kMyInterleaveFactor );

```

```
PGPFreeData( initVector );

if ( IsPGPError( err ) )
{
    return( err );
}

/*
** CFB encrypt/decrypt loop code...
*/
```

PGPInitCFB

```
PGPError          PGPInitCFB(
                    PGPCFBContextRef  feedbackContext,
                    const void          *key,
                    const void          *initializationVector );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------|--|
| feedbackContext | the target CFB context |
| key | the desired key data |
| initializationVector | the desired initialization vector data |

Description

Establishes the key(s) and/or initialization vector(s) for the cipher feedback context. One of `key` and `initializationVector` may be `NULL`, but not both.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The key data size is assumed to be the key size of the associated symmetric cipher, times the feedback context's interleave factor; the initialization vector (IV) data size is assumed to be the block size of the associated symmetric cipher, times the feedback context's interleave factor.

Since both arguments are copied into the cipher feedback context, the caller is encouraged to clear their memory upon successful return.

Both `key` and `initializationVector` must be set prior to any cipher operations. However, as a convenience to the PGPSdk developer, these may be set in separate calls to `PGPInitCFB` and/or `PGPInitSymmetricCipher` since these values are commonly obtained from different sources at different times.

If the PGPSdk developer neglects to call `PGPInitCFB` to set the initialization vector (for example, always sets the key via `PGPInitSymmetricCipher`), then the initialization vector defaults to zeroes. Generally, it is better cryptographic practice to set the initialization vector to random data.

PGPCopyCFBContext

```
PGPError          PGPCopyCFBContext(
                    PGPCFBContextRef  feedbackContextOrig,
                    PGPCFBContextRef  *feedbackContextCopy );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <code>feedbackContextOrig</code> | the source CFB context |
| <code>feedbackContextCopy</code> | the receiving field for the copy of the CFB context |

Description

Creates an exact copy of the source feedback cipher context.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant feedback cipher context copy with `PGPFreeCFBCipherContext`.

PGPFreeCFBContext

```
PGPError      PGPFreeCFBContext (
                PGPCFBContextRef  feedbackContext );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <code>feedbackContext</code> | the target cipher feedback context |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|

Description

Decrements the reference count for the specified cipher feedback context, and frees the context if the reference count reaches zero.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Before deallocating the context, the function erases all associated in-memory data.

PGPCFBEncrypt

```
PGPError      PGPCFBEncrypt (
                PGPCFBContextRef  feedbackContext,
                const void         *plainText,
                PGPSize            plainTextLength,
                void               *cipherText );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| <code>feedbackContext</code> | the target CFB context |
| <code>plainText</code> | the data to encrypt |
| <code>plainTextLength</code> | the length of the data to encrypt (in bytes) |
| <code>cipherText</code> | the receiving buffer for the resultant encrypted data |

Description

Encrypts the specified data according to the specified feedback context.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Call repeatedly to encrypt arbitrary amounts of data.

PGPCFBDecrypt

```
PGPError      PGPCFBDecrypt(
                PGPCFBContextRef  feedbackContext,
                const void         *cipherText,
                PGPSize            cipherTextLength,
                void               *plainText );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------|---|
| feedbackContext | the target CFB context |
| cipherText | the data to decrypt |
| cipherTextLength | the length of the data to decrypt (in bytes) |
| plainText | the receiving buffer for the resultant plain text |

Description

Decrypts the specified data according to the specified feedback context.

PGPCFBGetSymmetricCipher

```
PGPError      PGPCFBGetSymmetricCipher(
                PGPCFBContextRef  feedbackContext,
                PGPSymmetricCipherContextRef
                                *cipherContext );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| feedbackContext | the target CFB context |
| cipherContext | the receiving field for the context of the associated symmetric cipher |

Description

Get the symmetric cipher context associated with the specified cipher feedback context.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

`cipherContext` is the actual `PGPSymmetricCipherContext`, and *not* a copy. Since the feedback context “owns” the symmetric cipher, the caller should neither free nor dereference it, but may copy it.

Once obtained, the symmetric cipher reference can be used to obtain attributes of the underlying cipher, for example, its block size.

PGPCFBGetRandom

```
PGPError      PGPCFBGetRandom(
                PGPCFBContextRef  feedbackContext,
                PGPSize            requestCount,
                void               *randomData,
                PGPSize            *randomDataCount );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code>feedbackContext</code> | the target CFB context |
| <code>requestCount</code> | the maximum number of pseudo-random bytes to fetch |
| <code>randomData</code> | the receiving buffer for the pseudo-random bytes |
| <code>randomDataCount</code> | the receiving field for the actual number of pseudo-random bytes fetched |

Description

Fetches pseudo-random bytes from the specified cipher feedback context, and indicates the actual number of pseudo-random bytes obtained. A maximum of `requestCount` bytes are fetched.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The receiving buffer must be at least `requestCount` bytes in length.

PGPCFBRandomCycle

```
PGPError      PGPCFBRandomCycle(
                PGPCFBContextRef  feedbackContext,
                const void         *salt );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <code>feedbackContext</code> | the target CFB context |
| <code>salt</code> | the additional random byte data |

Description

Makes more pseudo-random bytes available by iterating through the existing random number pool, and applying the supplied **salt**.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The number of salt bytes is assumed to equal to the block size of the associated symmetric cipher.

This function will assert if the associated interleave factor is not exactly one.

PGPCFBRandomWash

```
PGPError      PGPCFBRandomWash(
                PGPCFBContextRef  feedbackContext,
                const void         *washData,
                PGPSize            washDataLength );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <code>feedbackContext</code> | the target CFB context |
| <code>washData</code> | the wash data |
| <code>washDataLength</code> | the length of the wash data |

Description

Hashes the associated specified symmetric cipher's key and initialization vector with the specified wash data to produce a new key and a new initialization vector.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

If `washDataLength` is less than the symmetric cipher block size, then padding bytes are used. If `washDataLength` is greater than the symmetric cipher block size, then multiple iterations occur. Passing “extra” wash data never reduces the resultant cryptographic strength of the resultant cipher text, and often increases it.

This function will assert if the associated interleave factor is not exactly one.

PGPCFBSync

```
PGPError          PGPCFBSync (
                    PGPCFBContextRef  feedbackContext );
```

Arguments

`feedbackContext` the target CFB context

Description

Reset the feedback mechanism to use the currently available data plus an additional number of previous bytes, such that the resultant data length equals the cipher block size.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This effectively changes the cipher block boundary.

PGPNewPublicKeyContext

```
PGPError          PGPNewPublicKeyContext (
                    PGPKeyRef          key,
                    PGPPublicKeyMessageFormat
                                    messageFormat,
                    PGPPublicKeyContextRef
                                    *publicKeyContext );
```

Arguments

`pgpContext` the target key
`messageFormat` the desired message format, which recognizes
 `kPGPPublicKeyMessageFormat_...` values (see Table 3-6)
`publicKeyContext` the receiving field for the resultant public key context

Description

Creates a context for public key operations based on the specified key and using the specified message format.

PGPFreePublicKeyContext

```
PGPError          PGPFreePublicKeyContext (
                    PGPPublicKeyContextRef
                                    publicKeyContext );
```

Arguments

`publicKeyContext` the target public key context

Description

Decrements the reference count for the specified public key context, and frees the context if the reference count reaches zero.

PGPGetPublicKeyOperationsSizes

```
PGPError      PGPGetPublicKeyOperationsSizes(
                PGPPublicKeyContextRef
                publicKeyContext,
                PGPSize      *maxDecryptedBufferSize,
                PGPSize      *maxEncryptedBufferSize,
                PGPSize      *maxSignatureSize );
```

Arguments

`publicKeyContext` the target public key context
`maxDecryptedBufferSize` the receiving field for the decryption buffer size (in bytes)
`maxEncryptedBufferSize` the receiving field for the encryption buffer size (in bytes)
`maxSignatureSize` the receiving field for the signature size (in bytes)

Description

Returns the sizes associated with the specified public key context. A resultant value of zero indicates that the associated operation is not available, for example if `maxSignatureSize` is zero, then signing is not a supported operation.

PGPPublicKeyEncrypt

```
PGPError      PGPPublicKeyEncrypt(
                PGPPublicKeyContextRef
                publicKeyContext,
                void const *plainText,
                PGPSize    plainTextLength,
                void        *cipherText,
                PGPSize    *cipherTextLength );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------|--|
| publicKeyContext | the target public key context |
| plainText | the buffer containing the input plain text |
| plainTextLength | the length of the input plain text |
| cipherText | the receiving buffer for the output cipher text, which must be at least maxEncryptedBufferSize (obtained from PGPGetPublicKeyOperationsSize) |
| cipherTextLength | the receiving field for the resultant length of the output cipher text |

Description

Encrypts one block of data, using **PKCS-1** padding.

PGPPublicKeyVerifySignature

```
PGPError          PGPPublicKeyVerifySignature(  
                    PGPPublicKeyContextRef  
                                publicKeyContext,  
                    PGPHashContextRef  hashContext,  
                    void const          *signature,  
                    PGPSize             signatureSize );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------|------------------------------------|
| publicKeyContext | the target public key context |
| hashContext | the target hash context |
| signature | the target signature |
| signatureSize | the length of the target signature |

Description

Verifies a signature on a message hash, which is finalized by this call.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The message hash should not have been finalized prior to the call.

PGPNewPrivateKeyContext

```
PGPError          PGPNewPrivateKeyContext(  
                    PGPKeyRef          key,  
                    PGPPrivateKeyMessageFormat  
                                messageFormat,  
                    char const          *passphrase,  
                    PGPPrivateKeyContextRef  
                                *privateKeyContext );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target key, which must be a public/private key pair |
| <code>messageFormat</code> | the desired message format, which recognizes kPGPPublicKeyMessageFormat_... values (see Table 3-6) |
| <code>passphrase</code> | the passphrase associated with the target key |
| <code>privateKeyContext</code> | the receiving field for the resultant private key context |

Description

Creates a context for private key operations based on the specified key and using the specified message format.

PGPFreePrivateKeyContext

```
PGPError      PGPFreePrivateKeyContext(
                PGPPrivateKeyContextRef
                privateKeyContext );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code>privateKeyContext</code> | the target private key context |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|

Description

Decrements the reference count for the specified private key context, and frees the context if the reference count reaches zero.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Before deallocating the context, the function erases all sensitive in-memory data.

PGPGetPrivateKeyOperationsSizes

```
PGPError      PGPGetPrivateKeyOperationsSizes(
                PGPPrivateKeyContextRef
                privateKeyContext,
                PGPSize      *maxDecryptedBufferSize,
                PGPSize      *maxEncryptedBufferSize,
                PGPSize      *maxSignatureSize );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code>privateKeyContext</code> | the target private key context |
| <code>maxDecryptedBufferSize</code> | the receiving field for the decryption buffer size (in bytes) |
| <code>maxEncryptedBufferSize</code> | the receiving field for the encryption buffer size (in bytes) |
| <code>maxSignatureSize</code> | the receiving field for the signature size (in bytes) |

Description

Returns the sizes associated with the specified private key context. A resultant value of zero indicates that the associated operation is not available.

PGPPrivateKeyDecrypt

```
PGPError      PGPPrivateKeyDecrypt(
                PGPPrivateKeyContextRef
                privateKeyContext,
                void const    *cipherText,
                PGPSize       cipherTextLength,
                void          *plainText,
                PGPSize       *plainTextLength );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| privateKeyContext | the target private key context |
| cipherText | the buffer containing the input cipher text |
| cipherTextLength | the length of the input cipher text |
| plainText | the receiving buffer for the output plain text, which must be at least maxDecryptedBufferSize (obtained from PGPPGetPrivateKeyOperationsSize) |
| plainTextLength | the receiving field for the resultant length of the output plain text |

Description

Decrypts one block of data.

Errors

kPGPError_FeatureNotAvailable

PGPPrivateKeySign

```
PGPError      PGPPrivateKeySign(
                PGPPrivateKeyContextRef
                privateKeyContext,
                PGPHashContextRef    hashContext,
                void                  *signature,
                PGPSize              *signatureSize );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| privateKeyContext | the target private key context |
| hashContext | the target hash context |
| signature | the receiving field for the signature, which must be at least maxSignatureSize (obtained from PGPPGetPrivateKeyOperationsSize) |
| signatureSize | the receiving field for the resultant length of the signature |

Description

Obtains the signature associated with the specified private key context, as well as its length (in bytes).

Errors

kPGPError_BadSignature

kPGPError_FeatureNotAvailable

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The message hash should not have been finalized prior to the call.

Chapter 4: Function Reference – Option List Functions

Introduction

The PGPsdk provides a flexible and extensible mechanism for presenting arbitrary option specifications and data to functions accepting this mechanism.

Since the option list mechanism was originally developed for encode/decode operations, the function prototypes are listed in the public header file `pgpEncode.h`. Future PGPsdk versions may provide a separate public header file for these functions.

The option list management functions and the individual option functions use copy semantics. That is, they create their own copy of the arguments, and so allow the caller to delete the argument data upon return. This is very important in the case of passphrase and other sensitive data. In these cases, the caller should not only free the memory occupied by the argument, but also ensure that the memory is first erased. Additionally, the individual option functions allocate `PGPOptionListRef` instances that are automatically deallocated once they are used in an option list management function (for example, `PGPBuildOptionList`), or as a sub-option (for example, `PGPOSignWithKey(..., PGPOPassphrase (...), ...)`).

The individual option functions do *not* return the data type `PGPError`; instead they always return the data type `PGPOptionListRef`. However, an error may have occurred, and the resultant option list may not be valid (this is almost always due to `kPGPError_BadParams`, but may also be `kPGPError_OutOfMemory`). Since this condition can not be detected reliably until the resultant option list is actually used, the PGPsdk developer should always consider these option list functions as being a potential failure point for functions accepting option list arguments.

The macro `PGPOptionListRefIsValid` can be used to determine validity, but only checks against the value `kInvalidPGPOptionListRef`. Other values that are also invalid but not currently exported include:

| | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| <code>kPGPEndOfArgsOptionListRef</code> | <code>((PGPOptionListRef) -1L)</code> |
| <code>kPGPOutOfMemoryOptionListRef</code> | <code>((PGPOptionListRef) -2L)</code> |
| <code>kPGPBadParamsOptionListRef</code> | <code>((PGPOptionListRef) -3L)</code> |
| <code>kPGPNullOptionListRef</code> | <code>((PGPOptionListRef) -4L)</code> |

These constants may be exported in future versions of the PGPsdk, and their values are subject to change.

Header Files

`pgpEncode.h`

Option List Management Functions

Option list management functions create and act upon persistent option lists, which must later be explicitly freed.

PGPNewOptionList

```
PGPError      PGPNewOptionList(
                PGPCContextRef      pgpContext,
                PGPOptionListRef     *outList );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|---|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| outList | the receiving field for the resultant option list |

Description

Creates an empty, persistent option list, which may then be the output target for subsequent `PGPAppendOptionList` and `PGPBuildOptionList` function calls.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant option list via `PGPFreeOptionList`.

PGPBuildOptionList

```
PGPError      PGPBuildOptionList(
                PGPCContextRef      pgpContext,
                PGPOptionListRef     *outList,
                PGPOptionListRef     firstOption,
                ...,
                PGPOLastOption( void ) );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| outList | the receiving field for the resultant option list |
| firstOption | the initial option list instance |
| ... | subsequent option list instances |
| PGPOLastOption(void) | must always appear as the final argument to terminate the argument list |

Description

Populates a persistent option list, replacing any previous content. Argument option list instances may be embedded option list function calls and/or previously built `PGPOptionListRef` instances, thus supporting modular assembly of option lists.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant option list via `PGPFreeOptionList`.

PGPCopyOptionList

```
PGPError      PGPCopyOptionList(
                PGPCConstOptionListRef
                                optionListOrig,
```



```
PGPOptionListRef    *optionListCopy );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>optionListOrig</code> | the source option list |
| <code>optionListCopy</code> | the receiving field for the copy of the option list |

Description

Creates a persistent, exact copy of the source option list.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant copy of the option list via `PGPFreeOptionList`.

PGPAppendOptionList

```
PGPError    PGPAppendOptionList(
                PGPContextRef    pgpContext,
                PGPOptionListRef  outList,
                PGPOptionListRef  firstOption,
                ...,
                PGPOLastOption( void ) );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>outList</code> | the existing option list to which the specified option list instances will be appended |
| <code>firstOption</code> | the initial option list instance |
| <code>...</code> | subsequent option list instances |
| <code>PGPOLastOption(void)</code> | must always appear as the final argument to terminate the argument list |

Description

Augments a persistent option list by appending the specified option(s) to any existing content. Argument option list instances may be embedded option list function calls and/or previously built `PGPOptionListRef` instances, thus supporting modular assembly of option lists.

PGPFreeOptionList

```
PGPError    PGPFreeOptionList(
                PGPOptionListRef  optionList );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>optionList</code> | the existing option list to be deallocated |
|-------------------------|--|

Description

Decrements the reference count for the specified option list (created by `PGPNewOptionList`, `PGPBuildOptionList`, or `PGPCopyOptionList`), and frees the option list if the reference count reaches zero.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Option lists that result from the inclusion of PGPO... functions in an argument list are automatically deallocated upon return from the employing function. Such employing functions include:

- PGPEncode
- PGPPDecode
- PGPPBuildOptionList
- PGPPAppendOptionList
- PGPPAddJobOptionList

PGPPAddJobOptions

```
PGPError      PGPPAddJobOptions(
                PGPJobRef          theJob,
                PGPOptionListRef    firstOption,
                ...,
                PGPPLastOption( void ) );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| theJob | the current job |
| firstOption | the initial option list instance |
| ... | subsequent option list instances |
| PGPPLastOption(void) | must always appear as the final argument to terminate the argument list |

Description

Pass new option information to the job upon receipt of certain events. The job argument should be passed as `event->job`. Additional `PGPOptionListRef` arguments can be specified similarly to the way they are passed to `PGPEncode` and `PGPPDecode`. However, only certain options can be set after each type of event. The legal options are described for each event, as well as enumerated in the preceding Constants and Data Structures section.

Common Encode/Decode Option List Functions

The following functions are used to create `PGPOptionListRef` instances for specifying the various common options to either `PGPPDecode` or `PGPEncode`. These functions can be used as temporary inline arguments, or presented to `PGPPAppendOptionList` and `PGPPBuildOptionList` to augment or create existing persistent lists.

PGPPInputBuffer

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPPInputBuffer(
                PGPPContextRef      pgpContext,
                void const           *inBuf,
                PGPPSize             inBufSize );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>inBuf</code> | the desired input buffer |
| <code>inBufSize</code> | the length of the input data in the desired input buffer |

Description

Specifies that input is to be taken from the referenced buffer.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

One of `PGPOInputBuffer`, `PGPOInputFile`, and `PGPOInputFileFSSpec` is required to specify an input source for functions that accept this option.

If this option is specified in addition to an input file option, then the operation will fail with `kPGPError_BadParams`.

PGPOInputFile

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOInputFile(  
    PGPContextRef      pgpContext,  
    PGPCnstFileSpecRef fileSpec );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>fileSpec</code> | the desired input file specification |

Description

Specifies that input is to be taken from the indicated file.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

One of `PGPOInputBuffer`, `PGPOInputFile`, and `PGPOInputFileFSSpec` is required to specify an input source for functions that accept this option.

If this option is specified in addition to an input buffer option, then the operation will fail with `kPGPError_BadParams`.

PGPOInputFileFSSpec

(MacOS platforms only)

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOInputBuffer(  
    PGPContextRef      pgpContext,  
    void const         *buffer,  
    const FSSpec        *fileSpec );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>fileSpec</code> | the desired input FS specification |

Description

Specifies that input is to be taken from the indicated file.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

One of `PGPOInputBuffer`, `PGPOInputFile`, and `PGPOInputFileFSSpec` is required to specify an input source for functions that accept this option.

If this option is specified in addition to an input buffer option, then the operation will fail with `kPGPError_BadParams`.

PGPODiscardOutput

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPODiscardOutput(
                                PGPContextRef    pgpContext,
                                PGPBoolean        discardOutput );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>discardOutput</code> | TRUE if the output is to be discarded |

Description

Specifies whether or not the output should be discarded, for example, sent to the null device.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

One of `PGPODiscardOutput`, `PGPOOutputFile`, `PGPOOutputBuffer`, and `PGPOOutputFileFSSpec` is required to specify an output destination for functions that accept this option.

If this option is specified with either an output file or an output buffer option, then the operation will fail with `kPGPError_BadParams`.

PGPOAllocatedOutputBuffer

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOAllocatedOutputBuffer(
                                PGPContextRef    pgpContext,
                                void              **outputBuffer,
                                PGPSize           maximumBufferSize,
                                PGPSize           *actualBufferSize );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>outputBuffer</code> | the receiving field for a pointer to the allocated buffer |
| <code>maximumBufferSize</code> | the maximum size to which the buffer may grow |
| <code>actualBufferSize</code> | the receiving field for the actual size of the buffer |

Description

Specifies that output should be placed in a dynamically allocated buffer. Upon completion of the operation, `outputBuffer` will contain a pointer to the buffer, and `actualBufferSize` will contain the length of the data in the output buffer.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant buffer with `PGPFreeData`.

Sample Code

```
PGPError    err;
void        *outputBuffer;
PGPSize     actualBufferSize;

err = PGPDecode( pgpContext,
                 PGPOInputFile( pgpContext,
                                fileSpec ),
                 PGPOAllocatedOutputBuffer( pgpContext,
                                             &outputBuffer,
                                             (PGPSize)( 1024 * 1024 ),
                                             &actualBufferSize ),
                 PGPOPassphrase( pgpContext,
                                 passphraseBuf ),
                 PGPOLastOption( void ) );

if ( !IsntPGPError( err ) )
{
    myProcessFunction( outputBuffer,
                      actualBufferSize );
    PGPFreeData( outputBuffer,
                 actualBufferSize );
}
```

PGPOOutputBuffer

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOOutputBuffer(
    PGPCContextRef    pgpContext,
    void              *outBuf,
    PGPSize           outBufSize,
    PGPSize           *outBufDataLength );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>outBuf</code> | the desired output buffer |
| <code>outBuf</code> | the available size of the desired output buffer |
| <code>outBufDataLength</code> | the receiving field for the actual length of the data output |

Description

Specifies that output should be placed in a statically allocated buffer. Upon completion of the operation, `outBufDataLength` will contain the actual size of the output.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

If `outputDataLength` is less than or equal to `bufferSize`, then all the output was successfully collected. If not, then some of the output data was lost.

One of `PGPODiscardOutput`, `PGPOOutputFile`, `PGPOOutputBuffer`, and `PGPOOutputFileFSSpec` is required to specify an output destination for functions that accept this option.

If this option is specified with either a discard output or an output file option, then the operation will fail with `kPGPError_BadParams`.

PGPOOutputFile

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOOutputFile(
    PGPCContextRef    pgpContext,
    PGPCConstFileSpecRef
                        fileSpec );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>fileSpec</code> | the specification of the desired output file |

Description

Specifies that output should be directed to the indicated file.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

One of `PGPODiscardOutput`, `PGPOOutputFile`, `PGPOOutputBuffer`, and `PGPOOutputFileFSSpec` is required to specify an output destination for functions that accept this option.

If this option is specified with either a discard output or an output buffer option, then the operation will fail with `kPGPError_BadParams`.

PGPOOutputFileFSSpec*(MacOS platforms only)*

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOOutputFileFSSpec(
    PGPCContextRef    pgpContext,
    const FSSpec      *fileSpec );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>fileSpec</code> | the FS specification of the desired output file |

Description

Specifies that output should be directed to the indicated file.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

One of `PGPODiscardOutput`, `PGPOOutputFile`, `PGPOOutputBuffer`, and `PGPOOutputFileFSSpec` is required to specify an output destination for functions that accept this option.

If this option is specified with either a discard output or an output buffer option, then the operation will fail with `kPGPError_BadParams`.

PGPOAppendOutput

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOAppendOutput(  
    PGPContextRef    pgpContext,  
    PGPBoolean       appendOutput );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>appendOutput</code> | TRUE if the output is to be appended to any associated file or buffer |

Description

Specifies whether or not output should be appended to any associated file or buffer, or should overwrite it.

PGPOPGPMIMEEncoding

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOPGPMIMEEncoding(  
    PGPContextRef    pgpContext,  
    PGPBoolean       mimeEncoding,  
    PGPSize          *mimeBodyOffset,  
    char             mimeSeparator[  
        kPGPMimeSeparatorSize ] );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>mimeEncoding</code> | TRUE if the output should be in MIME format |
| <code>mimeBodyOffset</code> | a field that will be used by the encoding process to hold the offset of the MIME body text, which is ignored if <code>mimeEncoding</code> is FALSE |
| <code>mimeSeparator</code> | a buffer that will be used by the encoding process to hold the MIME separator text, which must have a minimum length of <code>kPGPMimeSeparatorSize</code> , which is ignored if <code>mimeEncoding</code> is FALSE |

Description

Specifies whether or not the output should be in MIME format. If `mimeEncoding` is TRUE, then `mimeBodyOffset` is initialized to zero, and `mimeSeparator` is initialized to an empty string, assuming that they are non-NULL.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This option forcibly sets `PGPOArmorOutput`.

PGPOOmitMIMEVersion

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOOmitMIMEVersion(
    PGPContextRef      pgpContext,
    PGPBoolean         omitMIMEVersion );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>omitMIMEVersion</code> | TRUE if the MIME version should <i>not</i> be included in the output |

Description

Specifies whether or not the MIME version should be included in the output, since some mailers automatically add the MIME version to their output. By specifying TRUE, the PGPsdk developer can avoid inclusion of two MIME version entries.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This option is only meaningful in conjunction with a `PGPOPGPMIMEEncoding` instance that enables MIME format.

PGPOLocalEncoding

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOLocalEncoding(
    PGPContextRef      pgpContext,
    PGPLocalEncodingFlags
                        localEncode );
```


Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>localEncode</code> | the encoding to use, which recognizes <code>kPGPLocalEncoding_...</code> values (see Table 3-10) |

Description

Specifies the conditions under which the output should be converted to a platform-specific encoding. Currently, the PGPSdk only supports conversion to MacOS MacBinary format, and this function effectively does nothing on non-MacOS platforms. The local encoding flag values have the following meanings:

- `kPGPLocalEncoding_Auto` - effect conversion depending upon the output MacOS OSType file type
- `kPGPLocalEncoding_Force` - always effect conversion
- `kPGPLocalEncoding_NoMacBinCRCOkay` - flag the converted output such that a subsequent decode or signature verification ignores a failed CRC check
- `kPGPLocalEncoding_None` - no-op

The `kPGPLocalEncoding_Auto` and `kPGPLocalEncoding_Force` options are considered “main” options, and are mutually exclusive. `kPGPLocalEncoding_NoMacBinCRCOkay` and `kPGPLocalEncoding_None` are considered “modifier” options, and are intended to be OR’ed with one of the main options.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

`kPGPLocalEncoding_NoMacBinCRCOkay` is primarily intended to provide compatibility with *PGP Version 2.6.2*.

When specified for `PGPDecode`, the option applies only to any detached signatures.

Generally, the PGPSdk developer should always specify `kPGPLocalEncoding_Force` since this:

- ensures that no data will be lost
- is ignored for output on non-MacOS platforms
- is recognized for input by PGP version 5.5 software products on non-MacOS platforms

Sample Code

```
tOptListRef = PGPOLocalEncoding( pgpContext,
                                ( kPGPLocalEncoding_Force |
                                  kPGPLocalEncoding_NoMacBinCRCOkay ) );
```

PGPOOutputLineEndType

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOOutputLineEndType(
    PGPCContextRef    pgpContext,
    PGPLineEndType    lineEndType );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>lineEndType</code> | the line ending to use, which recognizes <code>kPGPLineEnd_...</code> values (see Table 3-9) |

Description

Specifies the type of line endings to use when generating text output.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This option is only meaningful in conjunction with `PGPOArmorOutput`.

If not specified, then the default line endings for the local platform is used.

PGPODetachedSig

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPODetachedSig(
    PGPContextRef      pgpContext,
    PGPOptionListRef   firstOption,
    ...,
    PGPOLastOption( void ) );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>firstOption</code> | the initial option list instance |
| <code>...</code> | subsequent option list instances |
| <code>PGPOLastOption(void)</code> | must always appear as the final argument to terminate the argument list |

Description

For `PGPEncode`, creates a detached signature for the message. No sub-options are defined at this time.

For `PGPDecode`, specifies the input source to be used to verify any associated detached signature. In this case, one of `PGPOInputBuffer`, `PGPOInputFile`, and `PGPOInputFileFSSpec` is required.

Common Encrypting and Signing Option List Functions**PGPOConventionalEncrypt**

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOConventionalEncrypt(
    PGPContextRef      pgpContext,
    PGPOptionListRef   firstOption,
    ...,
    PGPOLastOption( void ) );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>firstOption</code> | the initial option list instance |
| <code>...</code> | subsequent option list instances |
| <code>PGPOLastOption(void)</code> | must always appear as the final argument to terminate the argument list |

Description

Conventionally encrypt the message.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This requires a `PGPOPassphrase` sub-option to specify the conventional encryption key. The operation will fail if one is not specified.

PGPOCipherAlgorithm

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOCipherAlgorithm(  
    PGPContextRef    pgpContext,  
    PGPCipherAlgorithm algorithm );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>algorithm</code> | the cipher algorithm to use, which recognizes kPGPCipherAlgorithm_... values (see Table 3-4a) |

Description

Specifies the algorithm to use for encryption. This is currently meaningful only in conjunction with conventional encryption; otherwise the choice of encryption algorithm is based on the encrypt-to keys.

PGPOEncryptToKey

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOEncryptToKey(  
    PGPContextRef    pgpContext,  
    PGPKKeyRef       keyRef );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>keyRef</code> | the target key |

Description

Encrypt the plain text to the specified key.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

To encrypt the plain text with multiple keys, include an instance of this option in the `PGPEncode` option list for each key. There is no preset limit to the number of instances.

If the number of individual encrypt-to keys is large or if multiple data instances are to be encrypted, then it may be simpler to collect the keys as a key set and use `PGPOEncryptToKeySet`.

PGPOEncryptToKeySet

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOEncryptToKeySet(
    PGPCContextRef    pgpContext,
    PGPKKeySetRef     keySet );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>keySet</code> | the target key set |

Description

Encrypt the plain text to each key in the key set. This option may be used multiple times in one call.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

To encrypt the plain text to each key in multiple key sets, include an instance of this option in the `PGPEncode` option list for each key set. There is no preset limit to the number of instances.

PGPOEncryptToUserID

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOEncryptToUserID(
    PGPCContextRef    pgpContext,
    PGPUUserIDRef     userIDRef );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>userIDRef</code> | the target user ID |

Description

Encrypt the plain text to the key associated with the specified user ID.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

To encrypt the plain text with the keys associated with multiple user IDs, include an instance of this option in the `PGPEncode` option list for each user ID. There is no preset limit to the number of instances.

This function is believed to be of limited use, and may not be supported in future versions of the PGP SDK.

PGPOHashAlgorithm

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOHashAlgorithm(
    PGPCContextRef    pgpContext,
    PGPHHashAlgorithm algorithm );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>algorithm</code> | the desired hash algorithm, which recognizes <code>kPGPHashAlgorithm_...</code> values (see Table 3-3) |

Description

Use the specified algorithm as the hash algorithm for signatures. For example, force the use of the SHA-1 algorithm in an RSA signature.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

DSS keys unconditionally use the SHA-1 algorithm, and are unaffected by this option.

PGPOSignWithKey

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOSignWithKey(  
    PGPContextRef      pgpContext,  
    PGPKKeyRef         sigKey,  
    PGPOptionListRef   firstOption,  
    ...,  
    PGPOLastOption( void ) );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>sigKey</code> | the desired signing key |
| <code>firstOption</code> | the initial option list instance |
| <code>...</code> | subsequent option list instances |
| <code>PGPOLastOption(void)</code> | must always appear as the final argument to terminate the argument list |

Description

Sign the message or file with the specified key. Any required passphrase should be specified with a `PGPOPassphrase` sub-option. A passphrase event is posted if all of the following conditions exist:

- no passphrase sub-option is specified
- the target key requires a passphrase
- an event handler is defined (see `PGPOEventHandler`)

This function additionally accepts a `PGPOCompression` sub-option.

PGPOWarnBelowValidity

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOWarnBelowValidity(  
    PGPContextRef      pgpContext,  
    PGPValidity         minValidity );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>minValidity</code> | the desired validity threshold, which recognizes <code>kPGPValidity_...</code> values (see Table 3-8) |

Description

For encryption and signature verification, specifies that a warning event be sent for any encryption or signing key having a validity level less than that specified.

PGPOFailBelowValidity

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOFailBelowValidity(
    PGPContextRef      pgpContext,
    PGPValidity         minValidity );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>minValidity</code> | the desired validity threshold, which recognizes <code>kPGPValidity_...</code> values (see Table 3-8) |

Description

For encryption, specifies that a fatal error be recognized for an encryption key having a validity level less than that specified. For signature verification, specifies that the generated signature event `keyValidity` member be set to `kPGPValidity_Invalid`.

Encode-only Option List Functions

PGPOAskUserForEntropy

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOAskUserForEntropy(
    PGPContextRef      pgpContext,
    PGPBoolean         askUserForEntropy );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>askUserForEntropy</code> | <code>TRUE</code> if the user should be prompted for additional entropy |

Description

Specifies whether or not the user should be prompted to provide additional entropy if the global random pool entropy level drops below its minimum.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

If the user is not to be prompted and the entropy drops below minimum, then the operation will fail with `kPGPError_OutOfEntropy`.

PGPODataIsASCII

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPODataIsASCII(  
    PGPContextRef    pgpContext,  
    PGPBoolean       dataIsASCII );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>dataIsASCII</code> | TRUE if the input data should be interpreted as ASCII |

Description

Force all line endings to <CR><LF> pairs prior to encoding or signing. This flags the cipher text such that `PGPDecrypt` will generate the plain text with output line endings appropriate to the decoding platform.

PGPORawPGPInput

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPORawPGPInput(  
    PGPContextRef    pgpContext,  
    PGPBoolean       isRawPGPInput );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>isRawPGPInput</code> | TRUE if the input is assumed to be in raw PGP format |

Description

Indicates whether or not the input is already in binary PGP format. This simplifies decryption of messages that are multiply signed and/or multiply encrypted.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

`PGPORawPGPInput` is intended for internal use by the PGPSdk routines, and client code should specify this option rarely, if ever.

PGPOForYourEyesOnly

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOForYourEyesOnly(  
    PGPContextRef    pgpContext,  
    PGPBoolean       forYourEyesOnly );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>forYourEyesOnly</code> | TRUE to enable "for your eyes only" encryption mode |

Description

Encrypt in "for your eyes only" mode. This flags the cipher text such that the output events generated during decoding will reflect TRUE for the `forYourEyesOnly` member of the `PGPEventOutputData`. This in turn alerts the client to the fact that the resultant plain text should not be saved to disk, or otherwise made available to other recipients.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This option is not enforceable by the encrypting client - the decrypting client may always choose to ignore events entirely or simply ignore this indicator.

PGPOArmorOutput

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOArmorOutput(
    PGPContextRef    pgpContext,
    PGPBoolean       armorOutput );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|--|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| armorOutput | TRUE if the resultant output should be ASCII encoded |

Description

Ensures that all output is encoded as 7-bit ASCII. For example, a 32-bit binary numeric value of 688,798,386 would be rendered as the ASCII text string "290E3AB2", assuming big-endian encoding.

PGPOClearSign

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOClearSign(
    PGPContextRef    pgpContext,
    PGPBoolean       clearSign );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|---|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| clearSign | TRUE if the resultant output should be clear-signed |

Description

Clear-sign the message, that is, output the text as lexical section with the appropriate PGP delimiters, but do not encrypt the plain text. In this way, messages can be sent "in the clear" while still providing for authentication. This option forcibly sets both PGPOArmorOutput and PGPODataIsASCII.

Decode-only Option List Functions

PGPOImportKeysTo

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOImportKeysTo(
    PGPContextRef    pgpContext,
    PGPKeySetRef     keySet );
```


Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>keySet</code> | the target key set |

Description

If any keys are found in the input, add them to the specified key set.

PGPOPassThroughIfUnrecognized

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOPassThroughIfUnrecognized(  
    PGPContextRef    pgpContext ,  
    PGPBoolean       passThrough );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>passThrough</code> | TRUE if unrecognized lexical sections should <i>not</i> post an error |

Description

Indicate whether or not unrecognized lexical sections should post an error.

PGPOSendEventIfKeyFound

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOSendEventIfKeyFound(  
    PGPContextRef    pgpContext ,  
    PGPBoolean       sendEventIfKeyFound );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>sendEventIfKeyFound</code> | TRUE to enable sending of <code>kPGPEvent_KeyFound</code> events |

Description

Enable or disable sending `kPGPEvent_KeyFound` events, which allows an event handler to decide what to do with keys in the input.

(Sub-)Key Generation, Augmentation, and Revocation Option List Functions

The following functions are used to create `PGPOptionListRef` instances for specifying the various common options to `PGPGenerateKey`, `PGPGenerateSubKey`, `PGPGetKeyEntropyNeeded`, `PGPAddUserID`, and `PGPSignUserID`. These functions can be used as temporary inline arguments, or used with `PGPAppendOptionList` and `PGPBuildOptionList` to augment or create existing persistent lists.

PGPOAdditionalRecipientRequestKeySet

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOAdditionalRecipientRequestKeySet(  
    PGPContextRef    pgpContext ,
```

```
PGPKeySetRef    arrKeySet ,
PGPByte        arrKeyClass );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|--|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| arrKeySet | the key set containing the additional recipient request keys |
| arrKeyClass | the class of the additional recipient request keys |

Description

Establish the specified key(s) as additional recipient request key(s) when generating keys with PGPGenerateKey.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This option is valid for PGPGenerateKey only.
arrKeyClass is currently ignored, and should be specified as (PGPByte)0.

PGPOKeyGenName

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOKeyGenName(
                                PGPContextRef    pgpContext ,
                                const void        *name ,
                                PGPSize          nameLength );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|--|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| name | the desired name |
| nameLength | the length (in bytes) of the desired name, which must be between one and 256 |

Description

Establish the name to be used when generating keys with PGPGenerateKey.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This option is valid for PGPGenerateKey only.

PGPOKeyGenMasterKey

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOKeyGenMasterKey(
                                PGPContextRef    pgpContext ,
                                PGPKeyRef        masterKey );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|--------------------|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| masterKey | the "parent" key |

Description

Specifies the key on which a sub-key will be generated.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This option is valid for `PGPGenerateSubKey` only.

PGPOExportPrivateKeys

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOExportPrivateKeys(  
    PGPContextRef      pgpContext,  
    PGPBoolean         exportPrivateKeys );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>exportPrivateKeys</code> | TRUE to include private keys in exported key sets |

Description

Indicate whether or not private keys should be included when exporting key sets.

PGPOKeyGenFast

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOKeyGenFast(  
    PGPContextRef      pgpContext,  
    PGPBoolean         fastGen );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>fastGen</code> | TRUE to enable “fast” key generation mode |

Description

Indicate whether or not keys should be generated in “fast” mode, that is, based on “known” primes instead of dynamically generated primes.

PGPOKeyGenParams

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOKeyGenParams(  
    PGPContextRef      pgpContext,  
    PGPPublicKeyAlgorithm  
    pubKeyAlg,  
    PGPUInt32          keySize );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>pubKeyAlg</code> | the desired public key algorithm, which recognizes <code>kPGPPublicKeyAlgorithm_...</code> values (see Table 3-5) |
| <code>keySize</code> | the desired key size (in bits), which must be at least 512 |

Description

Establishes the public key algorithm and key size (in bits) to be used when generating keys or sub-keys, as well as when determining the entropy required to generate such keys or sub-keys.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The permissible key size values depend upon the choice of algorithm.

This option is required by those functions which accept it.

PGPOExpiration

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOExpiration(
    PGPContextRef      pgpContext,
    PGPUInt32          expirationDays );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>expirationDays</code> | the desired expiration date, expressed as days from “now” |

Description

Sets the expiration date of keys and their component items generated for the specified context. Whenever a key or component is actually generated, the PGPsdk adds the specified number of days to the current system time, which establishes the key's expiration date.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

To ensure that a key or component item has no expiration date, specify `expirationDays` as having the special value `kPGPExpirationTime_Never`.

PGPOExportable

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOExportable(
    PGPContextRef      pgpContext,
    PGPBoolean         canExport );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>canExport</code> | TRUE if the item is exportable |

Description

Indicate whether or not export of the key item in question is allowed. Currently, this only applies to signatures (see `PGPSignUserID`).

PGPOSigRegularExpression

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOSigRegularExpression(
    PGPContextRef      pgpContext,
    char const         *regExpr );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>regExpr</code> | the regular expression string |

Description

Establishes the specified regular expression for use by `PGPSignUserID`.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This option is valid for `PGPSignUserID` only.

PGPOSigTrust

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOSigTrust(  
    PGPCContextRef    pgpContext ,  
    PGPUInt32         trustLevel ,  
    PGPUInt32         validity );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>trustLevel</code> | the desired trust level for signatures, which assumes <code>kPGPNameTrust_...</code> values (see Table 3-7b) |
| <code>validity</code> | the desired trust value for signatures, which assumes <code>kPGPValidity_...</code> values (see Table 3-8) |

Description

Establishes the specified signature validity for use by `PGPSignUserID`.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This option is valid for `PGPSignUserID` only.

Misc. Option List Functions

PGPONullOption

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPONullOption( void );
```

Arguments

Description

Returns a special `PGPOptionListRef` that is always ignored.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

While this function is useful for providing a placeholder or default value in dynamically constructed option lists, the same results can be achieved by assembling the dynamic option list from modular, persistent lists.

Sample Code

```

switch(encryptToOption)
{
case kEncryptToKey:
    encryptToOptionRef = PGPOEncryptToKey( pgpContext,
                                           key );

    break;
case kEncryptToKeySet:
    encryptToOptionRef = PGPOEncryptToKeySet( pgpContext,
                                              keySet );

    break;
case kEncryptToUserID:
    encryptToOptionRef = PGPOEncryptToUserID( pgpContext,
                                              userID );

    break;
default:
    encryptToOptionRef = PGPONullOption ( void );
    break;
}
err = PGPOAppendOptionList( pgpContext,
                           baseOptionList,
                           encryptToOptionRef,
                           PGPOLastOption ) );

```

PGPOCompression

```

PGPOptionListRef PGPOCompression(
                    PGPContextRef    pgpContext,
                    PGPBoolean        isCompressed );

```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>isCompressed</code> | TRUE to indicate compress plain text before encrypting or signing |

Description

Indicates whether or not the input plain text should be compressed prior to encrypting or signing in binary format.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This option should routinely be specified as `TRUE`, since prior compression will not only reduce the size of the resultant cipher text, but also will increase the strength of the cipher text in most cases. This increase in the strength is partially a result of the reduction in plain text character frequency, and partially a result of the reduction in the amount of resultant cipher text.

Strong cipher text is essentially immune to compression, since it has large numbers of distinct “characters” that rarely if ever form repeating sequences.

PGPOCommentString

```

PGPOptionListRef PGPOCommentString(
                    PGPContextRef    pgpContext,

```

```
char const      *commentString );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------|--------------------|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| commentString | the comment text |

Description

Indicates that the specified comment string should be included in the message blocks.

PGPOVersionString

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOVersionString(  
    PGPContextRef      pgpContext,  
    char const         *versionString );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------|----------------------------|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| versionString | the desired version string |

Description

Indicates that the specified version string should be included in the message blocks.

Sample Code

```
char      versionString[256];  
PGPOptionListRef tmpOptListRef;  
  
PGPGetSDKString( &versionString[ 0 ] );  
tmpOptListRef = PGPOVersionString( pgpContext,  
                                     &versionString );
```

PGPOPassphrase

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOPassphrase(  
    PGPContextRef      pgpContext,  
    const char         *passphraseBuf );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| passphraseBuf | the passphrase string |

Description

Specifies the passphrase to be used for signing, conventional encrypting, and decrypting.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

For signing and conventional encryption, this option must be specified as a sub-option (see PGPSignWithKey and PGPOConventionalEncrypt).

PGPOPassphraseBuffer

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOPassphraseBuffer(
                                PGPContextRef      pgpContext,
                                const void          *passphraseBuf,
                                PGPSize             passphraseLength );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>passphraseBuf</code> | the passphrase data |
| <code>passphraseLength</code> | the length of the passphrase data |

Description

Specifies the passphrase to be used for signing, conventional encrypting, and decrypting. This differs from `PGPOPassphrase` in that the passphrase data and length are arbitrary, rather than being constrained to a C language string.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

For signing and conventional encryption, this option must be set as a sub-option (see `PGPOSignWithKey` and `PGPOConventionalEncrypt`).

PGPOPPreferredAlgorithms

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOPPreferredAlgorithms(
                                PGPContextRef      pgpContext,
                                PGPCipherAlgorithm const *cipherKeyAlg,
                                PGPUInt32          cipherKeyAlgCount );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>cipherKeyAlg</code> | an array of the preferred symmetric cipher algorithms, which recognizes <code>kPGPCipherAlgorithm_...</code> values (see Table 3-4a) |
| <code>cipherKeyAlgCount</code> | the number of symmetric cipher algorithms in the ordered array |

Description

Establishes the specified symmetric cipher algorithm(s) as the preferred algorithm(s) to use when generating keys and their sub-items, as well as when encrypting and signing. The order of the array determines the relative preferences, with the first element in the array being the most preferred algorithm.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The number of symmetric cipher algorithms in the ordered array must be between one and the number of available symmetric cipher algorithms (see `PGPCountSymmetricCiphers`).

No assumption is made regarding the actual availability of the symmetric cipher algorithm(s) listed in the array.

The actual choice of algorithm involves availability and acceptability considerations. This function simply adds a preference consideration.

Sample Code

```
PGPCipherAlgorithm    cipherKeyAlg[ 3 ] =
{
    kPGPCipherAlgorithm_CAST5, /* Most preferred    */
    kPGPCipherAlgorithm_3DES,
    kPGPCipherAlgorithm_IDEA  /* Least preferred */
};

prefCipherAlg = PGPOPreferredAlgorithms( PGPContext pgpContext,
                                         &cipherKeyAlg[ 0 ],
                                         ( sizeof( cipherKeyAlg ) /
                                           sizeof( PGPCipherAlgorithm ) ) );
```

PGPOKeySetRef

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOKeySetRef(
    PGPContextRef    pgpContext,
    PGPKKeySetRef    keySet );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|---------------------|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| keySet | the desired key set |

Description

For signature **validation** and decryption operations, use the *key database associated with the specified key set* as the look-up source for signature and decryption keys.

For key generation operations, use the *key database associated with the specified key set* as the destination for newly generated keys.

This option is required by those functions accepting it.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The current implementation treats the specified key set as an indirect parameter that references a key database, rather than as an explicit destination.

The indirect nature of this interface is likely to change in a future version, and will almost certainly involve changes to the function's semantics and usage.

PGPOSendNullEvents

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOSendNullEvents(
    PGPContextRef    pgpContext,
    PGPTimeInterval    approxInterval );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>approxInterval</code> | the desired time interval (in milliseconds) between event postings |

Description

Post a null event at each specified interval. This interval is approximate, but is guaranteed never to be less than that specified.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

These events provide a mechanism and a data source for implementing progress bars, as well as a window of opportunity to pause, modify, or terminate the job.

PGPOEventHandler

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOEventHandler(
    PGPContextRef      pgpContext,
    PGPEventHandlerProcPtr
                        eventHandler,
    PGPUserValue       eventHandlerArg );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>eventHandler</code> | the desired event handler |
| <code>eventHandlerArg</code> | the user-defined data to be passed as an argument to the event handler |

Description

Establish the specified function as the user event handler.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

For greatest flexibility, the PGPsdk developer should consider establishing `eventHandlerArg` as a pointer to a user-defined data type, for example a C struct.

Specify `eventHandlerArg` as (`PGPUserData`)0 to indicate a dummy argument.

PGPOLastOption

```
PGPOptionListRef PGPOLastOption( void );
```

Arguments**Description**

All functions having a variable number of arguments must include a special argument to indicate the end of the argument list. This function provides that argument, and *must* appear at the end of every variable argument list.

Chapter 5: Function Reference – Global Random Number Pool Management Functions

Introduction

Since the PGPsdk cryptographic functions require random numbers to operate correctly, the PGPsdk includes functions to manage a global pool of random numbers seeded from keystrokes and mouse movements. The SHA-1 hash function is used to distill entropy from incoming events and to spread it throughout the random pool.

The PGPsdk provides both cryptographically strong pseudo-random numbers as well as true random numbers based on external events. An internal fixed-size random pool holds random bits acquired from events passed in by the caller, and the PGPsdk estimates the entropy content (that is, the amount of true randomness) of the events, and tracks the total entropy available in the random pool at any time.

Random numbers are made available via an internal pseudo-random number generator (RNG) based on ANSI X9.17, and fed from the random pool. When there is sufficient entropy in the pool, the generator produces cryptographically strong true random numbers; when the entropy in the random pool is exhausted, the generator produces cryptographically strong pseudo-random numbers.

The **ANSI X9.17** -compliant PGPsdk random number package includes the following functionality:

- acquiring randomness from environmental events passed in by the application
- filling buffers with random data as requested
- tracking the number of true random bits available

The random number functions support the following arguments and features to control their actions:

- random seeding from keystrokes and mouse movements
- a cryptographically strong pseudo-random number generator based on ANSI X9.17
- saving of the random pool state in persistent storage with reload on library initialization
- soft degrade from true environmental random bits to cryptographically strong pseudo-random bits

Header Files

`pgpRandomPool.h`

Random Number Pool Management Functions

PGPGlobalRandomPoolAddKeystroke

```
PGPUInt32      PGPGlobalRandomPoolAddKeystroke(  
                PGPInt32      keyCode );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------|--|
| keyCode | the key code of the captured keystroke value |
|---------|--|

Description

Augments the random number pool based upon the value of the captured keystroke. A non-zero return value indicates that the operation increased the entropy of the random number pool.

PGPGlobalRandomPoolAddMouse

```
PGPUInt32      PGPGlobalRandomPoolAddMouse(
                PGPUInt32      x,
                PGPUInt32      y );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---|------------------------------|
| x | the mouse x-coordinate value |
| y | the mouse y-coordinate value |

Description

Augments the random number pool based upon the values of the captured mouse coordinates. A non-zero return value indicates that the operation increased the entropy of the random number pool.

Entropy Estimation Functions**PGPGlobalRandomPoolGetEntropy**

```
PGPUInt32      PGPGlobalRandomPoolGetEntropy( void );
```

Arguments**Description**

Returns a measure of the current entropy of the global random number pool.

PGPGlobalRandomPoolGetMinimumEntropy

```
PGPUInt32      PGPGlobalRandomPoolGetMinimumEntropy( void );
```

Arguments**Description**

Returns the minimum allowable entropy of the global random number pool that will support generation of random or cryptographically strong pseudo-random numbers.

PGPGlobalRandomPoolHasMinimumEntropy

```
PGPBoolean      PGPGlobalRandomPoolHasMinimumEntropy( void );
```

Arguments

Description

Returns `TRUE` if the current entropy of the global random number pool is sufficient to generate random or cryptographically strong pseudo-random numbers. This is a convenience function, and is the equivalent of:

```
if ( PGPGlobalRandomPoolGetEntropy( void ) >=
    PGPGlobalRandomPoolGetMinimumEntropy( void ) )
{
    return( TRUE );
}
else
{
    return( FALSE );
}
```

PGPGlobalRandomPoolGetSize

```
PGPUInt32      PGPGlobalRandomPoolGetSize( void );
```

Arguments

Description

Returns the current size of the global random number pool in bytes.

Chapter 6: Function Reference - Utility Toolbox

Introduction

The PGPsdk includes miscellaneous utility functions that relate to multiple functional areas, such as:

- context creation and management
- memory management
- file specification
- preferences
- date/time
- error code to error string conversion

Header Files

pgpsdkPrefs.h
pgpUtilities.h

Constants and Data Structures

Table 6-1: Memory Management Option Values.

| Memory Management Flag Constant |
|---------------------------------|
| kPGPMemoryFlags_Clear |

Table 6-2a: MacOS File Creator Values.

| MacOS File Creator Constant | MacOS OSType Value |
|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| kPGPMacFileCreator_DecryptedBinary | ???? |
| kPGPMacFileCreator_DecryptedText | ttxt |
| kPGPMacFileCreator_Keys | pgpK |
| kPGPMacFileCreator_Tools | pgpM |

Table 6-2b: MacOS File Type Values.

| MacOS File Type Constant | MacOS OSType Value |
|--------------------------------|--------------------|
| kPGPMacFileTypeArmorFile | TEXT |
| kPGPMacFileTypeDecryptedBinary | BINA |
| kPGPMacFileTypeDecryptedText | TEXT |
| kPGPMacFileTypeDetachedSig | pgDS |
| kPGPMacFileTypeEncryptedData | pgEF |
| kPGPMacFileTypeExportedKeys | TEXT |
| kPGPMacFileTypePref | pref |
| kPGPMacFileTypePrivRing | pgRR |
| kPGPMacFileTypePubRing | pgPR |
| kPGPMacFileTypeRandomSeed | pgRS |
| kPGPMacFileTypeSignedData | pgSF |

Table 6-3: Preference Selector Values.

| Preference Selector Constant |
|------------------------------|
| kPGPsdkPref_DefaultKeyID |

| |
|----------------------------|
| kPGPsdkPref_PrivateKeyring |
| kPGPsdkPref_PublicKeyring |
| kPGPsdkPref_RandomSeedFile |

Figure 6-1: PGPNewContextStruct typedef.

```
typedef struct PGPNewContextStruct
{
    /*
     ** sizeofStruct must be initialized
     ** to sizeof( PGPNewContextStruct )
     */
    PGPUInt32                sizeofStruct;
    PGPMemoryAllocationProc   allocProc;
    PGPMemoryReallocationProc reallocProc;
    PGPMemoryDeallocationProc deallocProc;
    PGPUUserValue             allocUserValue;
} PGPNewContextStruct;
```

Context Creation and Management Functions

PGPNewContext

```
PGPError      PGPNewContext(
                PGPUInt32      clientAPIVersion,
                PGPContextRef   *pgpContext );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------|--|
| clientAPIVersion | the version of the current PGPsdk client API |
| pgpContext | the receiving field for the new context |

Description

Creates a context that employs the default PGPsdk memory management functions.

Errors

```
kPGPError_IncompatibleAPI
kPGPError_InvalidRef
```

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

clientAPIVersion should always be specified as the special value kPGPsdkVersion.

PGPNewContextCustom

```
PGPError      PGPNewContextCustom(
                PGPUInt32      clientAPIVersion,
                PGPNewContextStruct const
                                *pgpContextStruct,
                PGPContextRef   *pgpContext );
```


Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <code>clientAPIVersion</code> | the version of the current PGPSdk client API |
| <code>pgpContextStruct</code> | the custom context information |
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the receiving field for the new context |

Description

Creates a `PGPContext` that employs user-defined memory management functions. The custom information is passed as a `PGPNewContextStruct` (see Table 7-4).

Errors

| |
|--|
| <code>kPGPError_IncompatibleAPI</code> |
| <code>kPGPError_InvalidRef</code> |

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

`clientAPIVersion` should always be specified as the special value `kPGPSdkVersion`.

The `PGPNewContextStruct` member `sizeofStruct` must be specified as the special value `sizeof(PGPNewContextStruct)`.

The custom memory allocation function should expect to receive the following arguments in the following order:

| | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <code>PGPContextRef</code> | <code>context</code> |
| <code>PGPSize</code> | <code>allocationSize</code> |
| <code>PGPMemoryFlags</code> | <code>flags</code> |
| <code>PGPUserValue</code> | <code>userValue</code> |

If the `flags` argument is specified as `kPGPMemoryFlags_Clear`, then the function should initialize the resultant memory to zeroes.

The custom memory re-allocation function should expect to receive the following arguments in the following order:

| | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code>PGPContextRef</code> | <code>context</code> |
| <code>void</code> | <code>**allocation</code> |
| <code>PGPSize</code> | <code>newAllocationSize</code> |
| <code>PGPMemoryFlags</code> | <code>flags</code> |
| <code>PGPUserValue</code> | <code>userValue</code> |

If the `flags` argument is specified as `kPGPMemoryFlags_Clear`, then the function should initialize the resultant memory to zeroes.

The custom memory de-allocation function should expect to receive the following arguments in the following order:

| | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| <code>PGPContextRef</code> | <code>context</code> |
| <code>void</code> | <code>*allocation</code> |
| <code>PGPUserValue</code> | <code>userValue</code> |

PGPFreeContext

```
PGPError      PGPFreeContext(
                PGPContextRef      pgpContext );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
|-------------------------|--------------------|

Description

Decrements the reference count for the specified context (created by either `PGPNewContext` or `PGPNewContextCustom`), and frees the context if the reference count reaches zero.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

A `PGPContext` must *not* be freed until and unless all data items allocated using that context have been explicitly freed.

PGPSetContextUserValue

```
PGPError      PGPSetContextUserValue(
                PGPContextRef      pgpContext ,
                PGPUserValue        userValue );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>userValue</code> | the associated (replacement) user-defined data |

Description

Sets the user-defined data associated with the specified context to that specified by `userValue`.

PGPGetContextUserValue

```
PGPError      PGPGetContextUserValue(
                PGPContextRef      pgpContext ,
                PGPUserValue        *userValue );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>userValue</code> | the receiving field for the associated user-defined data |

Description

Retrieves the user-defined data associated with the specified context.

PGPContextGetRandomBytes

```
PGPError      PGPContextGetRandomBytes(
                PGPContextRef      pgpContext ,
                void                *dataBuf ,
                PGPSize             availLength );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>dataBuf</code> | the receiving buffer for the associated pseudo-random bytes |
| <code>availLength</code> | the length of the receiving buffer |

Description

Places the pseudo-random bytes associated with the specified context into the specified buffer. A maximum of `availLength` bytes is retrieved. The function returns `kPGPError_OutOfEntropy` if the specified context's global random pool does not have sufficient entropy.

Errors

`kPGPError_OutOfEntropy`

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The size of the global random pool and its entropy are independent of one another.

Memory Management Functions

PGPNewData

```
void                *PGPNewData(  
                    PGPCContextRef    pgpContext,  
                    PGPSize           allocationSize );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>allocationSize</code> | the number of 8-bits bytes to be allocated |

Description

Allocates the specified number of 8-bit bytes of memory, using the memory allocation function associated with the specified context.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

`PGPNewData` is used internally by the PGPSdk `PGPNew...` functions. Client code should rarely, if ever, have a reason to use this function.

Memory allocated with `PGPNewData` should always be deallocated with `PGPFreeData`.

A return value of (`void *`)`NULL` indicates failure.

PGPNewSecureData

```
void                *PGPNewSecureData(  
                    PGPCContextRef    pgpContext,  
                    PGPSize           allocationSize,  
                    PGPBoolean        *didLock );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>allocationSize</code> | the number of 8-bit bytes to be allocated |
| <code>didLock</code> | set to <code>TRUE</code> upon return if the memory allocated is guaranteed not to be swapped to secondary storage (virtual memory implementations) |

Description

Allocates the specified number of 8-bit bytes of memory, using the memory allocation function associated with the specified context. The allocated memory is intended to store sensitive data such as passphrases, and so:

- the function attempts to preclude the allocated memory being swapped to secondary storage, thus simplifying later clearing of the memory
- memory allocated with this function is automatically cleared just prior to its deallocation

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Memory allocated with `PGPNewSecureData` should always be deallocated with `PGPFreeData`.

A return value of `(void *)NULL` indicates failure.

Not all platforms support page locking, and those that do may restrict it to certain classes of users, for example, the superuser. Still, the PGPsdk will utilize whatever facilities do exist for the platform, and will ensure erasure of the resident memory upon deallocation.

PGPFreeData

```
void                PGPFreeData(
                        void                *allocation );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| <code>allocation</code> | the target data in memory |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|

Description

Frees memory allocated with `PGPNewData` and `PGPNewSecureData`. Memory allocated with `PGPNewSecureData` is cleared prior to its being freed.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The operation will fail silently if `allocation` is `NULL`, or if the associated internal header control block is corrupted.

File Specification Functions**PGPNewFileSpecFromFSSpec***(MacOS platforms only)*

```
PGPError            PGPNewFileSpecFromFSSpec(
                        PGPCContextRef        pgpContext ,
                        const FSSpec          *spec ,
                        PGPFFileSpecRef      *fileRef );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|--|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| spec | the source Macintosh FS specification |
| fileRef | the receiving field for the resultant file specification |

Description

Creates a file specification from the specified Macintosh FS specification.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant file specification with `PGPFreeFileSpec`.

PGPNewFileSpecFromFullPath *(Non-MacOS platforms only)*

```
PGPError      PGPNewFileSpecFromFullPath(
                PGPCContextRef      pgpContext ,
                char const           *pathname ,
                PGPFileSpecRef       *fileRef );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|--|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| pathname | the source pathname |
| fileRef | the receiving field for the resultant file specification |

Description

Creates a file specification from a pathname.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant file specification with `PGPFreeFileSpec`.

PGPCopyFileSpec

```
PGPError      PGPCopyFileSpec(
                PGPCConstFileSpecRef
                                fileSpecOrig ,
                PGPFileSpecRef   *fileSpecCopy );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------|--|
| fileSpecOrig | the source file specification |
| fileSpecCopy | the receiving field for the copy of the file specification |

Description

Creates an exact copy of the source file specification.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant file specification copy with `PGPFreeFileSpec`.

PGPFreeFileSpec

```
PGPError      PGPFreeFileSpec(
                PGPFileSpecRef    fileSpecRef );
```

Arguments

fileSpecRef the target file specification

Description

Decrements the reference count for the specified file specification, and frees the file specification if the reference count reaches zero.

PGPGetFSSpecFromFileSpec

(MacOS platforms only)

```
PGPError      PGPGetFSSpecFromFileSpec(
                PGPConstFileSpecRef
                                fileSpec,
                FSSpec           *fsSpec );
```

Arguments

fileSpec the source file specification
fsSpec the receiving field for the resultant Macintosh FS specification

Description

Converts the specified file specification to a Macintosh FS specification.

Errors

kPGPError_FileNotFound

PGPGetFullPathFromFileSpec

(Non-MacOS platforms only)

```
PGPError      PGPGetFullPathFromFileSpec(
                PGPConstFileSpecRef
                                fileSpec,
                char             **fullPathPtr );
```

Arguments

fileSpec the target file specification
fullPathPtr the receiving field for a pointer to the resultant full pathname

Description

Converts the specified file specification to a file pathname, and places it into dynamically allocated memory.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant pathname with PGPFreeData.

PGPMacBinaryToLocal

(MacOS platforms only)

```
PGPError      PGPMacBinaryToLocal(
                PGPFileSpecRef      inSpec,
                PGPFileSpecRef      *outSpec,
                PGPUInt32            *macCreator,
                PGPUInt32            *macTypeCode );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>inSpec</code> | the source file specification, which is assumed to reference a MacOS MacBinary file |
| <code>outSpec</code> | the receiving field for the file specification to the converted file |
| <code>macCreator</code> | the receiving field for the MacOS OSType of the creating application, which is always one of the <code>kPGPMacFileCreator_...</code> values (see Table 6-2a) |
| <code>macType</code> | the receiving field for the MacOS OSType of the file type, which is always one of the <code>kPGPMacFileType_...</code> values (see Table 6-2b) |

Description

Converts a MacOS MacBinary file to files containing its data fork and resource fork. The source file is deleted upon conversion.

A return value of `kPGPError_NoMacBinaryTranslationAvailable` indicates that while the conversion did succeed and that the source file was deleted, either:

- the `macCreator` and/or `macType` values were not recognized, and so the file suffix was defaulted to `.bin`
- the source file had no data fork

A return value of `kPGPError_NotMacBinary` indicates that the source file specification does not reference a MacOS MacBinary file. The source file is unaltered.

Errors

```
kPGPError_NoMacBinaryTranslationAvailable
kPGPError_NotMacBinary
```

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The `macCreator` and `macType` arguments are optional. If specified as `NULL`, then the corresponding data item is not returned.

No assumption should be made regarding the name of the resultant file. The PGPSdk chooses the most appropriate extension for the encoded file type.

Preference Functions

PGPSdkInit

```
PGPError      PGPSdkInit( void );
```

Arguments

Description

Initializes the PGPsdk global state. This function must be called before using any part of the PGPsdk.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Multiple calls to this function will *not* re-initialize the global variables. Instead, a mechanism similar to the opaque data type reference count mechanism tracks the calls. This frees the PGPsdk developer from having to worry about whether or not the global state has already been initialized, since a subsequent initialization will not adversely affect the global state.

The caller is responsible for freeing any and all resources held by the PGPsdk with PGPsdkCleanup.

Calling this function is redundant for Windows and MacOS platforms, since it is called by the PGPsdk library initial entry point.

PGPsdkCleanup

```
PGPError      PGPsdkCleanup( void );
```

Arguments

Description

Releases any and all resources held by the PGPsdk.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This function should be called only after freeing the last PGPContext. Any subsequent usage of the PGPsdk must first call PGPsdkInit.

Calling this function is redundant for Windows and MacOS platforms, since the PGPsdk library automatically calls this function upon exit.

PGPsdkLoadDefaultPrefs

```
PGPError      PGPsdkLoadDefaultPrefs(
                PGPContextRef      pgpContext );
```

Arguments

pgpContext the target context

Description

Loads the preferences from the default preference file.

PGPsdkLoadPrefs

```
PGPError      PGPsdkLoadPrefs(
                PGPContextRef      pgpContext ,
```



```
PGPFileSpecRef    prefSpec );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|--|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| prefSpec | the file containing the stored preferences |

Description

Loads the preferences from the specified preference file.

PGPsdSavePrefs

```
PGPError    PGPsdSavePrefs(
                PGPContextRef    pgpContext );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|--------------------|
| pgpContext | the target context |
|------------|--------------------|

Description

Saves any changed preference to its associated source file.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The PGPContext “remembers” the source file from which each preference was loaded, and so the preference information is saved to that file.

PGPsdPrefSetData

```
PGPError    PGPsdPrefSetData(
                PGPContextRef    pgpContext ,
                PGPsdPrefSelector prefSelector ,
                void const        *prefBuf ,
                PGPSize           prefLength );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------|---|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| prefSelector | the target preference, which recognizes kPGPsdPref_... values (see Table 6-3) |
| prefBuf | the associated (replacement) preference data |
| prefLength | the length of the associated (replacement) preference data |

Description

Sets the data associated with the specified preference to the specified (replacement) preference data.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller must additionally call PGPsdSavePrefs to make the change permanent.

PGPsdPrefSetFileSpec

```
PGPError      PGPsdPrefSetFileSpec(
                PGPCContextRef      pgpContext,
                PGPsdPrefSelector    prefSelector,
                PGPCConstFileSpec     fileSpec );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------|---|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| prefSelector | the target preference, which recognizes kPGPsdPref_... values (see Table 6-3) |
| fileSpec | the (replacement) file specification |

Description

Establishes the specified file as the persistent store for the specified preference.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller must additionally call `PGPsdSavePrefs` to make the change permanent.

PGPsdPrefGetData

```
PGPError      PGPsdPrefGetData(
                PGPCContextRef      pgpContext,
                PGPsdPrefSelector    prefSelector,
                void                  **prefBuf,
                PGPSize               *prefLength );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------|---|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| prefSelector | the target preference, which recognizes kPGPsdPref_... values (see Table 6-3) |
| prefBuf | the receiving field for a pointer to the requested preference data |
| prefLength | the receiving field for the resultant length of the requested preference data |

Description

Retrieves the data associated with the specified preference into dynamically allocated memory.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant preference data with `PGPFreeData`.

PGPsdPrefGetFileSpec

```
PGPError      PGPsdPrefGetFileSpec(
                PGPCContextRef      pgpContext,
                PGPsdPrefSelector    prefSelector,
                PGPCFileSpecRef       *fileSpec );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>pgpContext</code> | the target context |
| <code>prefSelector</code> | the target preference, which recognizes <code>kPGPsdkPref_...</code> values (see Table 6-3) |
| <code>fileSpec</code> | the receiving field for the associated file specification |

Description

Retrieves the file specification associated with the specified preference.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant file specification with `PGPFreeFileSpec`.

Date/Time Functions

PGPGetTime

```
PGPTime          PGPGetTime( void );
```

Arguments

Description

Returns the current system time as a `PGPTime` format time value.

PGPGetPGPTimeFromStdTime

```
PGPTime          PGPGetPGPTimeFromStdTime(  
                time_t          theTime );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------|--|
| <code>theTime</code> | the time in Standard C Library time format |
|----------------------|--|

Description

Returns the specified time as a `PGPTime` format time value.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The data type `time_t` is that used by many of the Standard C Library time functions, for example `time()`.

PGPGetStdTimeFromPGPTime

```
time_t          PGPGetStdTimeFromPGPTime(  
                PGPTime          theTime );
```

Arguments

`theTime` the time as a PGPTime data type

Description

Returns the specified PGPTime value as a `time_t` format time value.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The data type `time_t` is that used by many of the Standard C Library time functions, for example `time()`.

PGPGetYMDFromPGPTime

```
void                PGPGetYMDFromPGPTime(
                    PGPTime                theTime,
                    PGPUInt16              *year,
                    PGPUInt16              *month,
                    PGPUInt16              *day );
```

Arguments

`theTime` the time as a PGPTime data type
`year` the receiving field for the year component
`month` the receiving field for the month component
`day` the receiving field for the day component

Description

Extracts the year, month, and day components from the specified PGPTime time value.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The `year`, `month`, and `day` arguments are optional. If specified as `NULL`, then the corresponding data item is not returned.

The `year` component includes the century.

The `month` and `day` components are one-based.

Sample Code

```
PGPUInt16          year;          /* Includes century          */
PGPUInt16          month;         /* January = 1; December = 12 */
PGPUInt16          day;           /* Assumes values 1 - 31      */

/*
** Output the current date as YYYY.MM.DD
*/
PGPGetYMDFromPGPTime( PGPGetTime( void ),
                      &year,
                      &month,
                      &day );

printf( "%04d.%02d.%02d\n",
```

```
year,  
month,  
day );
```

PGPTimeFromMacTime

(MacOS platforms only)

```
PGPTime          PGPTimeFromMacTime(  
                  PGPUInt32          theTime );
```

Arguments

theTime the time as a MacOS format time value

Description

Returns the specified MacOS format time value as a PGPTime format time value.

Sample Code

```
PGPUInt32  macTime;  
  
err = PGPNewKeyCreationTimeFilter( pgpContext,  
                                   PGPTimeFromMacTime( macTime ),  
                                   kPGPMatchLessOrEqual,  
                                   *outFilter );
```

PGPTimeToMacTime

(MacOS platforms only)

```
PGPUInt32          PGPTimeToMacTime(  
                  PGPTime          theTime );
```

Arguments

theTime the time as a PGPTime format time value

Description

Returns the specified PGPTime format time value as a MacOS format time value.

Sample Code

```
PGPUInt32  macTime;  
  
macTime = PGPTimeToMacTime( PGPGetTime ( void ) );
```

Error Look-Up Functions

PGPGetErrorString

```
PGPError          PGPGetErrorString(  
                  PGPError          theErrorCode,  
                  PGPSize          availLength,  
                  char              *theErrorText );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| <code>theErrorCode</code> | the encoded error value |
| <code>availLength</code> | the available length of the receiving buffer |
| <code>theErrorText</code> | the receiving buffer |

Description

Looks-up the encoded error value, and places the corresponding error text formatted as a *C* language string into the receiving buffer .

Errors

`kPGPError_BufferTooSmall`

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The error text is truncated as required, and results in `kPGPError_BufferTooSmall` being returned.

Chapter 7: Function Reference - Feature (Capability) Query Functions

Introduction

When one considers the present state of U.S. export law and the continuously evolving set of cryptographic standards, algorithms, and formats, the simultaneous existence of multiple versions of the PGPsdk becomes a very real possibility. For example, one version of the PGPsdk library may support encryption, while another supports signing but not encryption. By including functions that return version numbers and the availability of specific features (capabilities), the PGPsdk provides applications with a measure of version independence, as well as a specific and extensible mechanism for determining feature availability.

The feature query functions that allow the caller to determine the availability of a specific feature before attempting to use it are the only supported means for determining such availability. The PGPsdk version number should *not* be used to determine feature availability. As the PGPsdk library evolves and adopts a more customized, modular build model that may include “stub” functions that do nothing except return an appropriate error code, the presence and use of these feature query functions can only increase in importance.

Header Files

pgpFeatures.h

Constants and Data Structures

Table 7-1: PGPGetFeatureFlags Feature (Capability) Selector Values.

| Feature (Capability) Selector Constants |
|---|
| kPGPFeatures_GeneralSelector |
| kPGPFeatures_ImplementationSelector |

Table 7-2: kPGPFeatures_GeneralSelector Mask Values.

| General Selector Mask Constants |
|---------------------------------|
| kPGPFeatureMask_CanDecrypt |
| kPGPFeatureMask_CanEncrypt |
| kPGPFeatureMask_CanSign |
| kPGPFeatureMask_CanVerify |

Table 7-3: kPGPFeatures_ImplementationSelector Mask Values.

| Implementation Selector Mask Constants |
|--|
| kPGPFeatureMask_HasTimeout |
| kPGPFeatureMask_IsDebugBuild |

Figure 7-1: PGPAgorithmInfo typedef.

```
typedef struct PGPAgorithmInfo
{
```

```

        char                shortName[ 32 ];
        char                longName[ 96 ];
        char                copyright[ 128 ];
        PGPFflags           flags;
        PGPUInt32           reserved[ 16 ];
    } PGPAlgorithmInfo;

```

Figure 7-2: PGPPublicKeyAlgorithmInfo typedef.

```

typedef struct PGPPublicKeyAlgorithmInfo
{
    PGPAlgorithmInfo      info;
    PGPPublicKeyAlgorithm algID;
    PGPBoolean            canEncrypt;
    PGPBoolean            canSign;
    PGPBoolean            reserved1;
    PGPBoolean            reserved2;
    PGPUInt32             reserved[ 8 ];
} PGPPublicKeyAlgorithmInfo;

```

Figure 7-3: PGPSymmetricCipherInfo typedef.

```

typedef struct PGPSymmetricCipherInfo
{
    PGPAlgorithmInfo      info;
    PGPCipherAlgorithm     algID;
    PGPUInt32             reserved[ 8 ];
} PGPSymmetricCipherInfo;

```

Feature (Capability) Query Functions

PGPGetFeatureFlags

```

PGPError PGPGetFeatureFlags(
    PGPFfeatureSelector featureSelector,
    PGPFflags           *featureFlags );

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| featureSelector | the feature flags to obtain, which recognizes kPGPFeatures_...Selector values (see Table 7-1) |
| featureFlags | the receiving field for the feature flags |

Description

Retrieves the flags associated with the specified feature selector. A return value of kPGPError_ItemNotFound indicates that the featureSelector value is not recognized.

Errors

kPGPError_ItemNotFound

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Since `flags` is an encoded value, individual features should always be extracted by presenting the `PGPFeatureExists` macro (defined in `pgpFeatures.h`) with the appropriate `kPGPFeatureMask_...` value (see Table 7-2 and Table 7-3).

Sample Code

```
PGPFlags      featureFlags;

if ( ( PGPFeatureExists( featureFlags,
                        ( kPGPFeatureMask_CanSign |
                          kPGPFeatureMask_CanEncrypt ) ) ) );
{
    /* features-are-available code */
}
```

PGPCountPublicKeyAlgorithms

```
PGPError      PGPCountPublicKeyAlgorithms(
                PGPUInt32      *numPKAlgs );
```

Arguments

`numPKAlgs` the receiving field for the number of available public key algorithms

Description

Provides the number of available public key algorithms.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Use this count as the exclusive upper limit when indexing through the available algorithms (see the sample code for `PGPGetIndexedPublicKeyAlgorithmInfo`).

PGPGetIndexedPublicKeyAlgorithmInfo

```
PGPError      PGPGetIndexedPublicKeyAlgorithmInfo(
                PGPUInt32      index,
                PGPPublicKeyAlgorithmInfo
                                *info );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>index</code> | the index (zero-based) of the desired public key algorithm |
| <code>info</code> | the receiving field for the associated algorithm information |

Description

Provides a means of indexing through the available public key algorithms and accessing their associated information, which is of type `PGPPublicKeyAlgorithmInfo` (see Figure 7-1 and Figure 7-2).

Sample Code

```
PGPError          err;
PGPUInt32         index;
PGPUInt32         numPKAlgs;
PGPPublicKeyAlgorithm targetPKAlg;
PGPPublicKeyAlgorithmInfo info;

if ( IsPGPError( err = PGPCountPublicKeyAlgorithms( &numPKAlgs ) ) )
{
    return( err );
}
targetPKAlg = kPGPPublicKeyAlgorithm_ElGamal;
for ( index = 0; index < numPKAlgs; index++ )
{
    if ( IsPGPError( err = PGPPGetIndexedPublicKeyAlgorithmInfo( index, &info ) ) )
    {
        return( err );
    }
    if ( info.algID == targetPKAlg )
    {
        break;
    }
}

if ( index >= numPKAlgs )
{
    return( kPGPError_UnknownPublicKeyAlgorithm );
}

return( kPGPError_NoErr );
```

PGPCountSymmetricCiphers

```
PGPError          PGPCountSymmetricCiphers(
                    PGPUInt32          *numSymmetricCiphers );
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <code>numSymmetricCiphers</code> | the receiving field for the number of available symmetric ciphers |
|----------------------------------|---|

Description

Provides the number of available symmetric ciphers.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

Use this count as the exclusive upper limit when indexing through the available symmetric ciphers (see the sample code for `PGPGetIndexedSymmetricCipherInfo`).

PGPGetIndexedSymmetricCipherInfo

```
PGPError      PGPGetIndexedSymmetricCipherInfo(
                PGPUInt32      index,
                PGPSymmetricCipherInfo
                        *info );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| <code>index</code> | the index (zero-based) of the desired symmetric cipher |
| <code>info</code> | the receiving field for the associated information |

Description

Provides a means of indexing through the available symmetric ciphers and accessing the associated information, which is of type `PGPSymmetricCipherInfo` (see Figure 7-1 and Figure 7-3).

Sample Code

```
PGPError      err;
PGPUInt32     index;
PGPUInt32     numSymmetricCiphers;
PGPCipherAlgorithm  targetSymmetricCipher;
PGPSymmetricCipherInfo  info;

if ( IsPGPError( err = PGPCountSymmetricCiphers( &numSymmetricCiphers ) ) )
{
    return( err );
}

targetSymmetricCipher = kPGPCipherAlgorithm_3DES;
for ( index = 0; index < numSymmetricCiphers; index++ )
{
    if ( IsPGPError( err = PGPGetIndexedSymmetricCipherInfo( index, &info ) ) )
    {
        return( err );
    }
    if ( info.algID == targetSymmetricCipher )
    {
        break;
    }
}

if ( index >= numSymmetricCiphers )
{
    return( kPGPError_UnknownSymmetricCipher );
}
```

```
return( kPGPError_NoErr );
```

PGPGetSDKVersion

```
void                PGPGetSDKVersion(
                    PGPUInt32          *version );
```

Arguments

`version` the receiving field for the version number value

Description

Places the PGPsdk API version number into the referenced field. Since the version number is encoded, its components should always be extracted using the `PGPMajorVersion`, `PGPMinorVersion`, and `PGPRevVersion` macros defined in `pgpUtilities.h`.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The version number reflects the API version, and not the release version of the packaged software developer's kit. Generally speaking, the API version is independent of the version of the PGPsdk.

Sample Code

```
PGPUInt32          completeVersionNumber;
char               versionString[ 256 ];

PGPGetSDKVersion( &completeVersionNumber );

sprintf(&versionString[ 0 ],
        "PGPsdk Version %d.%d.%d (c) 1997 Pretty Good Privacy, Inc.\n",
        PGPMajorVersion( completeVersionNumber ),
        PGPMinorVersion( completeVersionNumber ),
        PGPRevVersion( completeVersionNumber ) );

printf("%s\n",
        &versionString[ 0 ] );
```

PGPGetSDKString

```
void                PGPGetSDKString(
                    char               theString[ 256 ] );
```

Arguments

`theString[256]` a buffer having a minimum length of 256 bytes to receive the PGPsdk API version string

Description

A convenience function that yields a C language string of the form:

```
PGPsdk Version 1.1.0 (c) 1997 Pretty Good Privacy, Inc.
```

This function is the equivalent of the sample code included for `PGPGetSDKVersion`.

Sample Code

```
char        versionString[ 256 ];

PGPGetSDKString( &versionString[ 0 ] );
printf("%s\n",
        &versionString[ 0 ] );
```


Chapter 8: Function Reference – Key Server Functions

Introduction

The PGPsdk includes functions that support communication with HTTP and LDAP key servers, and allow developers to search for, add, disable, and delete keys on those servers.

Key server search operations support the same key filter mechanism described in Chapter 2, and yield a key set of the keys on the server that satisfy the filter criteria. LDAP servers essentially support the entire set of available primitive filters; HTTP servers support a significantly more limited set (see Table 8-5).

Key server add, disable, and delete operations accept a key set that specifies input, and yield a resultant key set that contains the keys that could not be added, disabled, or deleted.

Key server search for, add, disable, and delete operations include a user-defined callback function. This function gains control periodically, and so allows the developer to look for a pending user cancel request, effect other processing as required, or perform whatever operations the developer wishes. It is important to note that the intent and functionality of this callback mechanism is quite different from that of the event handler mechanism provided for key generation and encrypt/decrypt operations. No event is sent and no event-specific data is included – the callback function simply assumes control and executes until it returns. If the callback function returns a value other than `kPGPError_NoErr`, then the associated key server operation is aborted.

Header Files

`pgpKeyServer.h`
`pgpKeyServerTypes.h`

Constants and Data Structures

Table 8-1: Key Server State Values.

| Key Server State Constants |
|---|
| <code>kPGPKeyServerStateConnect</code> |
| <code>kPGPKeyServerStateDisconnect</code> |
| <code>kPGPKeyServerStateReceive</code> |
| <code>kPGPKeyServerStateSend</code> |
| <code>kPGPKeyServerStateWait</code> |

Table 8-2: Key Server Query Completion Values.

| Key Server Query Completion Constants |
|--|
| <code>kPGPKeyServerQuery_PartialResults</code> |

Table 8-3: Key Server Space Values.

| PGPKeyServerKeySpace |
|-----------------------------------|
| <code>kPGPKSKeySpaceNormal</code> |

| |
|--------------------------|
| kPGPKSKeySpacePending |
| kPGPKSKeySpaceDefault*** |

*** kPGPKSKeySpaceDefault is currently equivalent to kPGPKSKeySpaceNormal.

Table 8-4: Key Server Access Values.

| PGPKeyServerAccessType |
|----------------------------|
| kPGPKSAccess_Normal |
| kPGPKSAccess_Administrator |
| kPGPKSAccess_Default |

*** kPGPKSAccess_Default is currently equivalent to kPGPKSAccess_Normal.

Table 8-5: Valid PGPQueryKeyServer Filters for Key Server Protocols.

| Filter Function | HTTP | LDAP |
|---------------------------------|------|------|
| PGPIntersectFilters | | ● |
| PGPNegateFilter | | ● |
| PGPNewKeyCreationTimeFilter | | ● |
| PGPNewKeyDisabledFilter | | ● |
| PGPNewKeyEncryptAlgorithmFilter | | ● |
| PGPNewKeyEncryptKeySizeFilter | | ● |
| PGPNewKeyExpirationTimeFilter | | ● |
| PGPNewKeyFingerPrintFilter | | |
| PGPNewKeyIDFilter | ● | ● |
| PGPNewKeyRevokedFilter | | ● |
| PGPNewKeySigAlgorithmFilter | | ● |
| PGPNewKeySigKeySizeFilter | | |
| PGPNewSigKeyIDFilter | | ● |
| PGPNewSubKeyIDFilter | | ● |
| PGPNewUserIDEmailFilter | ● | ● |
| PGPNewUserIDNameFilter | ● | ● |
| PGPNewUserIDStringFilter | ● | ● |
| PGPUnionFilters | | ● |

Figure 8-1: PGPKeyServerMonitor typedef.

```
typedef struct PGPKeyServerMonitor
{
    PGPUInt32          magic;
    char               *monitorTag;
    char               **monitorValues;
    struct PGPKeyServerMonitor *next;
} PGPKeyServerMonitor;
```

Events and Callbacks

A number of the key server functions allow the calling application to request callbacks to track the progress of the request. These functions generally require a perceptible amount of execution time, regardless of the size of their target key set.

An event handler serves two purposes – it provides notification to the calling application that an event has occurred, and provides a mechanism for the calling application to affect processing (in a pre-defined manner). Notification includes a pointer to a `PGPEvent` data type that, depending on the type of event, provides detailed information about the cause of the event. The calling application can then respond appropriately, which may or may not intervene and affect the course of further processing. If

the calling application wishes to intervene, then it can abort the request by returning an error code (a value other than `kPGPError_NoErr`).

All event handlers are declared as

```
PGPError myEvents( PGPContextRef pgpContext,
                  PGPEvent *event,
                  PGPUintValue userValue );
```

The `pgpContext` argument is the reference to the context of the function posting the event. The `event` argument references a `PGPEvent` data type as follows:

```
struct PGPEvent_
{
    PGPVersion          version;
    struct PGPEvent_    *nextEvent;
    PGPJobRef           job;
    PGPEventType        type;
    PGPEventData        data;
};
typedef struct PGPEvent_ PGPEvent;
```

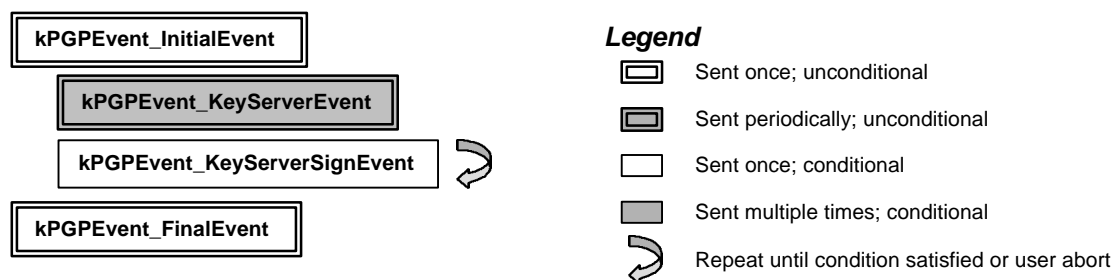
The `version` and `nextEvent` members are currently reserved for internal use. The `job` member is not applicable to key server functions. The `type` member identifies the event being posted, and recognizes `kPGPEvent_...` values (see Table 3-1). The `data` member is a union of the event-specific data structures, which are described with their corresponding event.

The calling application can modify the processing context by invoking `PGPAddJobOptions` as

```
PGPError PGPAddJobOptions( PGPJobRef job, ... );
```

The value of the `job` argument is that of the `PGPEvent` argument's `job` member. Additional `PGPOptionListRef` arguments are specified similarly to the way they are passed to `PGPEncode` and `PGPDecode`. However, only certain options can be set after each type of event, and these are listed for each event.

Figure 8-2: Key Server Request Processing Event Sequence.



Key Server Request Events

kPGPEvent_InitialEvent

Sent before all other events. Implies initiation of the key server request.

Data

None

Options

None

kPGPEvent_KeyServerEvent

Similar to `kPGPEvent_NullEvent`, this event reports the progress of the key server request, and allows the PGPsdk developer to determine its completion percentage.

The `state` member indicates the current point in the key server request processing from the caller's point of view, and assumes `kPGPKeyServerState...` values (see Table 8-1).

The `soFar` and `total` members should be treated as relative, unscaled quantities – they are not necessarily byte or number-of-keys quantities. In all cases, the completion percentage is calculated as follows:

```
double      completionPercent;
PGPUInt32   processState;

if ( event->type == kPGPEvent_KeyServerEvent )
{
    if ( event->keyServerData.total != 0 )
    {
        completionPercent = ( 100 * event->keyServerData.soFar ) /
                               event->keyServerData.total;
    }
    else
    {
        completionPercent = 100;
    }
    processState = event->keyServerData.state;
}
```

Data

```
typedef struct PGPEventKeyServerData_
{
    PGPUInt32      state;
    PGPUInt32      soFar;
    PGPUInt32      total;
} PGPEventKeyServerData;
```

Options

None

kPGPEvent_KeyServerSignEvent

Sent if a signing key is needed for authentication (posted by `PGPUUploadToKeyserver`, `PGPDeleteFromKeyserver`, and `PGPDisableFromKeyserver`) to ensure that the requestor is authorized to effect the operation on the current qualifying key. The event handler should invoke `PGPAddJobOptions` specifying the `PGPOSignWithKey` and the `PGPOClearSign` options, or return `kPGPError_UserAbort`. Note that `PGPOSignWithKey` further requires either the `PGPOPassphrase` or the `PGPOPassphraseBuffer` option:

```
if ( event->type == kPGPEvent_KeyServerEvent )
{
```

```

char passPhraseBuf[ 256 ];

/*
** For operations on multiple keys, the passphrase function should
** return a copy of the passphrase from a secure cache. Otherwise,
** the user would be required to enter a passphrase for each key,
** instead of just for each operation.
*/
myGetPassphrase( &passPhraseBuf[ 0 ] );
err = PGPAAddJobOption( event->job,
                        PGPOSignWithKey(
                            pgpContext,
                            sigKey,
                            PGPOPassphrase( pgpContext,
                                                &passPhraseBuf[ 0 ]),
                            PGPOLastOption( void ) ),
                        PGPOClearSign( pgpContext,
                                        TRUE ),
                        PGPOLastOption( void ) );

memset( &passPhraseBuf[ 0 ],
        \0,
        256 );
}

```

This event is sent repeatedly until a valid signing key is received, or until the event handler requests abort of the job. This allows the event handler to enforce a limit on the number of passphrase attempts.

The `state` member indicates the current point in the key server request processing from the caller's point of view, and assumes `kPGPKeyServerState...` values (see Table 8-1). It is not particularly useful in this context.

Data

```

typedef struct PGPEventKeyServerSignData_
{
    PGPUInt32      state;
} PGPEventKeyServerSignData;

```

Options

```

PGPOSignWithKey
PGPOClearSign

```

kPGPEvent_FinalEvent

Sent after all other events. Implies completion of the key server request.

Data

None

Options

None

Key Server Functions

PGPKeyServerInit

```
PGPError      PGPKeyServerInit( void );
```

Arguments

Description

Initializes the underlying communications layer that the PGPsdk requires to access a key server. This function effectively creates a communications session, and must be called prior to calling any other key server function.

Errors

kPGPError_UnknownError

PGPNewKeyServerFromURL

```
PGPError      PGPNewKeyServerFromURL(
                PGPContextRef      pgpContext,
                char const          *url,
                PGPKeyServerAccessType
                                accessType,
                PGPKeyServerKeySpace
                                keySpace,
                PGPKeyServerRef     *keyServer );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|--|
| pgpContext | the target context |
| url | the destination URL, which is of the form [[protocol:][/]host.domain[:port] |
| accessType | recognizes kPGPKSKeySpace_... values |
| keySpace | recognizes kPGPKSKeyAccess_... values |
| keyServer | the receiving field for the resultant key server communication context |

Description

Creates a new HTTP or LDAP communication context, depending on the specified URL.

The `accessType` argument is advisory only, that is, no initial authorization validation occurs. However, it must reflect `kPGPKSAccess_Administrator` if the caller intends to later invoke any of the following functions:

- `PGPLDAPNewServerMonitor`
- `PGPUploadToKeyserver`
- `PGPDeleteFromKeyserver`
- `PGPDisableFromKeyserver`

The `keySpace` argument indicates which keys may be acted upon by the following functions:

- `PGPQueryFromKeyserver`

- `PGPDeleteFromKeyserver`
- `PGPDisableFromKeyserver`

A value of `kPGPKSKeySpaceNormal` restricts the above functions to those keys which meet the target keyserver's policy requirements, while a value of `kPGPKSKeySpacePending` restricts the above functions to those keys which do not.

Errors

`kPGPError_ServerInvalidProtocol`

Notes, Tips, and Warnings

If the `protocol:` portion of the destination URL is omitted, then an HTTP context is assumed.

If the `:port` portion of the destination URL is omitted, then an appropriate HTTP or LDAP port number is assumed.

PGPLDAPNewServerMonitor

```
PGPError          PGPLDAPNewServerMonitor(  
                    PGPKKeyServerRef      keyServer,  
                    PGPEEventHandlerProcPtr  
                                callBack,  
                    PGPUUserValue         callBackArg,  
                    PGPKKeyServerMonitorRef  
                                *dataAndStats );
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| <code>keyServer</code> | the target key server |
| <code>callBack</code> | the desired callback function or (<code>PGPEEventHandlerProcPtr</code>)NULL to indicate no callbacks. |
| <code>callBackArg</code> | the user-defined data, to be passed as an argument to the callback function (meaningful only in conjunction with <code>callBack</code>) |
| <code>dataAndStats</code> | the receiving field for the resultant key server data and statistics |

Description

Creates a new key server monitor that contains relevant data about and statistics for the specified LDAP key server. The resultant data and statistics are contained in a linked list of `PGPKKeyServerMonitor` datatypes, which contain name/value pairs where a pair may have multiple values.

Depending upon the policies established for the target key server, this function may generate a `kPGPEvent_KeyServerSignEvent`. In this case, a valid `callBack` argument is required, or the function will fail with `kPGPError_ServerAuthorizationRequired`.

Errors

`kPGPError_ServerOperationNotAllowed`
`kPGPError_ServerAuthorizationRequired`

Notes, Tips, and Warnings

Calling this function for an HTTP key server will result in the return of `kPGPError_ServerOperationNotAllowed`.

Specify `callbackArg` as `(PGPUserData)0` to indicate a dummy argument.

The caller is responsible for freeing the resultant LDAP server monitor with `PGPLDAPFreeServerMonitor`.

Sample Code

```
PGPKeyServerMonitor      thisMonitor;
PGPKeyServerMonitor      nextMonitor;
PGPKeyServerMonitorRef   dataAndStats;

err = PGPLDAPNewServerMonitor ( keyServer,
                                ( PGPEventHandlerProcPtr )NULL,
                                ( PGPUserValue )0,
                                &dataAndStats );
if ( ( IsPGPError( err ) ) || ( dataAndStats == ( PGPKeyServerMonitor * )NULL ) )
{
    return;
}

/*
** Display the resultant data and statistics
*/
thisMonitor = dataAndStats;
while (thisMonitor != ( PGPKeyServerMonitor * )NULL )
{
    nextMonitor = thisMonitor->next;
    printf( "%s\n",
            thisMonitor->monitorTag );
    while ( thisMonitor->monitorValues != NULL )
    {
        printf( "\t%s\n",
                thisMonitor->monitorValues++ );
    }
    thisMonitor = next_Monitor;
}

/*
** Free the resultant data and statistics
*/
thisMonitor = dataAndStats;
while (thisMonitor != ( PGPKeyServerMonitor * )NULL )
{
    nextMonitor = thisMonitor->next;
    err = PGPLDAPFreeServerMonitor( keyServer, thisMonitor );
    thisMonitor = next_Monitor;
}

return;
```

```
PGPError    MyEventHandler()  
{  
  
}
```

PGPLDAPFreeServerMonitor

```
PGPError      PGPLDAPFreeServerMonitor(  
                PGPKKeyServerRef    keyServer,  
                PGPKKeyServerMonitorRef  
                    dataAndStats );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------|---|
| keyServer | the target key server |
| dataAndStats | the target key server data and statistics |

Description

Decrements the reference count for the specified key server monitor, and frees the key server monitor if the reference count reaches zero.

PGPFreeKeyServer

```
PGPError      PGPFreeKeyServer(  
                PGPKKeyServerRef    keyServer );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| keyServer | the target key server |
|-----------|-----------------------|

Description

Decrements the reference count for the specified key server, and frees the key server if the reference count reaches zero.

PGPKKeyServerOpen

```
PGPError      PGPKKeyServerOpen(  
                PGPKKeyServerRef    keyServer );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| keyServer | the target key server |
|-----------|-----------------------|

Description

Explicitly opens the specified key server. Key server request processing can be optimized by coding several key server requests within a PGPKKeyServerOpen / PGPKKeyServerClose “block”, since this avoids implicit open/close operations for each request.

Errors

```
kPGPError_ServerOpenFailed  
kPGPError_ServerSearchFailed
```

Notes, Tips, and Warnings

This function is meaningful for LDAP key servers only. The HTTP protocol does not support the notion of “session”, and so this function is an effective no-op.

A return value of `kPGPError_ServerSearchFailed` indicates that the target key server is not a certificate server, that is, it has no recognizable PGP key space.

The caller is responsible for explicitly closing the specified key server with `PGPKeyServerClose`.

PGPQueryKeyServer

```
PGPError      PGPQueryKeyServer(
                PGPKeyServerRef    keyServer,
                PGPFILTERRef        filter,
                PGPEventHandlerProcPtr
                                callback,
                PGPUserValue        callbackArg,
                PGPKeySetRef        *resultSet,
                PGPPFlags           *resultInfo );
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code>keyServer</code> | the target key server |
| <code>filter</code> | the target key filter |
| <code>callback</code> | the desired callback function or (<code>PGPEventHandlerProcPtr</code>)NULL to indicate no callbacks |
| <code>callbackArg</code> | the user-defined data, to be passed as an argument to the callback function (meaningful only in conjunction with <code>callback</code>) |
| <code>resultSet</code> | the receiving field for the resultant key set |
| <code>resultInfo</code> | the receiving field for the query completion information flags or (<code>PGPPFlags</code> *)NULL to indicate no information is desired |

Description

Applies the specified key filter (constructed as detailed in Chapter 2) to the keys on the specified key server. This yields a resultant key set that contains all of the keys on the key server that meet the key filter criteria.

The `resultInfo` argument is recognized for LDAP key servers only. Currently, only `kPGPKeyServerQuery_PartialResults` flag is ever set, which indicates that the request could not retrieve all of the qualifying keys.

Errors

```
kPGPError_ServerOpenFailed
kPGPError_ServerSearchFailed
kPGPError_UserAbort
```

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

`kPGPError_ServerOpenFailed` and `kPGPError_ServerSearchFailed` are returned for LDAP key servers only, and indicate that no `PGPKeyServerOpen` instance is currently in force.

Specify `callbackArg` as (`PGPUserData`)0 to indicate a dummy argument.

The query may legitimately return an empty key set.

The caller is responsible for freeing the resultant key set (empty or not!) with `PGPFreeKeySet`.

PGPUploadToKeyServer

```
PGPError      PGPUploadToKeyServer(  
                PGPKKeyServerRef    keyServer,  
                PGPKKeySetRef       keysToUpload,  
                PGPEventHandlerProcPtr  
                                callback,  
                PGPUserValue        callbackArg,  
                PGPKKeySetRef       *keysThatFailed );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <code>keyServer</code> | the target key server |
| <code>keysToUpload</code> | the key set containing the keys to be transferred |
| <code>callback</code> | the desired callback function or (<code>PGPEventHandlerProcPtr</code>)NULL to indicate no callbacks |
| <code>callbackArg</code> | the user-defined data, to be passed as an argument to the callback function (meaningful only in conjunction with <code>callback</code>) |
| <code>keysThatFailed</code> | the receiving field for the key set containing the keys that could not be successfully transferred |

Description

Transfers the specified keys to the specified key server. The key server connection must have been established with an access type of `kPGPKSAccess_Administrator`.

Errors

```
kPGPError_ServerAuthorizationRequired  
kPGPError_ServerOpenFailed  
kPGPError_ServerSearchFailed  
kPGPError_ServerKeyFailedPolicy  
kPGPError_ServerKeyAlreadyExists  
kPGPError_ServerPartialAddFailure  
kPGPError_UserAbort
```

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

`kPGPError_ServerOpenFailed` and `kPGPError_ServerSearchFailed` are returned for LDAP key servers only if no `PGPKKeyServerOpen` instance is currently in force.

Depending upon the policies established for the target key server, this function may generate a `kPGPEvent_KeyServerSignEvent` – potentially one for each key to be uploaded. In this case, a valid `callback` argument is required, or the function will fail with `kPGPError_ServerAuthorizationRequired`.

The returned error code is not always complete – multiple keys may have failed, each for a different reason. The choice of error code obeys the following hierarchy:

- key failed policy – usually indicates that the key was not signed by a recognized user.

- key already exists – the key data presented matches that already on the key server. This implies that the caller already has the most up-to-date version of the key
- key general failure
- other PGPsdk error code

Specify `callbackArg` as (`PGPUserData`)0 to indicate a dummy argument.

The caller is responsible for freeing the resultant key set with `PGPFreeKeySet`.

PGPDeleteFromKeyServer (LDAP key servers only)

```
PGPError      PGPDeleteFromKeyServer(
                PGPKKeyServerRef      keyServer,
                PGPKKeySetRef          keysToDelete,
                PGPEventHandlerProcPtr
                                callback,
                PGPUserValue           callbackArg,
                PGPKKeySetRef          *keysThatFailed );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <code>keyServer</code> | the target key server |
| <code>keysToDelete</code> | the key set containing the keys to be deleted |
| <code>callback</code> | the desired callback function or (<code>PGPEventHandlerProcPtr</code>)NULL to indicate no callbacks |
| <code>callbackArg</code> | the user-defined data, to be passed as an argument to the callback function (meaningful only in conjunction with <code>callback</code>) |
| <code>keysThatFailed</code> | the receiving field for the key set containing the keys that could not be successfully deleted |

Description

Deletes the specified keys from the specified key server, which must be an LDAP key server. The key server connection must have been established with an access type of `kPGPKSAccess_Administrator`.

Errors

```
kPGPError_ServerOperationNotAllowed
kPGPError_ServerAuthorizationFailed
kPGPError_ServerOpenFailed
kPGPError_ServerSearchFailed
kPGPError_ServerRequestFailed
kPGPError_UserAbort
```

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This function is *not* valid for HTTP key servers, and results in the return of `kPGPError_ServerOperationNotAllowed`.

`kPGPError_ServerOpenFailed` and `kPGPError_ServerSearchFailed` are returned for LDAP key servers only if no `PGPKKeyServerOpen` instance is currently in force.

Depending upon the policies established for the target key server, this function may generate a `kPGPEvent_KeyServerSignEvent` – potentially one for each key to be deleted. In this case, a

valid `callBack` argument is required, or the function will fail with `kPGPError_ServerAuthorizationRequired`.

Specify `callBackArg` as `(PGPUserData)0` to indicate a dummy argument.

The caller is responsible for freeing the resultant key set with `PGPFreeKeySet`.

PGPDisableFromKeyServer (LDAP key servers only)

```
PGPError      PGPDisableFromKeyServer(  
                PGPKKeyServerRef      keyServer,  
                PGPKKeySetRef         keysToDisable,  
                PGPEventHandlerProcPtr  
                    callBack,  
                PGPUserValue          callBackArg,  
                PGPKKeySetRef         *keysThatFailed );
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <code>keyServer</code> | the target key server |
| <code>keysToDisable</code> | the key set containing the keys to be disabled |
| <code>callBack</code> | the desired callback function or <code>(PGPEventHandlerProcPtr)NULL</code> to indicate no callbacks |
| <code>callBackArg</code> | the user-defined data, to be passed as an argument to the callback function (meaningful only in conjunction with <code>callBack</code>) |
| <code>keysThatFailed</code> | the receiving field for the key set containing the keys that could not be successfully disabled |

Description

Disables the specified keys on the specified key server, which must be an LDAP key server. The key server connection must have been established with an access type of `kPGPKSAccess_Administrator`.

Errors

```
kPGPError_ServerOperationNotAllowed  
kPGPError_ServerAuthorizationFailed  
kPGPError_ServerOpenFailed  
kPGPError_ServerSearchFailed  
kPGPError_ServerRequestFailed  
kPGPError_UserAbort
```

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

This function is *not* valid for HTTP key servers, and results in the return of `kPGPError_ServerOperationNotAllowed`.

`kPGPError_ServerOpenFailed` and `kPGPError_ServerSearchFailed` are returned for LDAP key servers only if no `PGPKKeyServerOpen` instance is currently in force.

Depending upon the policies established for the target key server, this function may generate a `kPGPEvent_KeyServerSignEvent` – potentially one for each key to be disabled. In this case, a valid `callBack` argument is required, or the function will fail with `kPGPError_ServerAuthorizationRequired`.

Specify `callbackArg` as (`PGPUserData`)0 to indicate a dummy argument.

The caller is responsible for freeing the resultant key set with `PGPFreeKeySet`.

PGPGetKeyServerErrorString

```
void                PGPGetKeyServerErrorString(
                    PGPKeyServerRef    keyServer,
                    char                **theString );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>keyServer</code> | the target key server |
| <code>theString</code> | the receiving field for a pointer to the associated error text |

Description

Places the equivalent error text of the most recent error of the specified key server in the dynamically allocated string buffer.

Notes, Warnings, and Tips

The caller is responsible for deallocating the resultant error text with `PGPFreeData`.

PGPKeyServerClose

```
PGPError            PGPKeyServerClose(
                    PGPKeyServerRef    keyServer );
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| <code>keyServer</code> | the target key server |
|------------------------|-----------------------|

Description

Explicitly closes the specified key server (see `PGPKeyServerOpen`).

Notes, Tips, and Warnings

This function is meaningful for LDAP key servers only. The HTTP protocol does not support the notion of “session”, and so this function is an effective no-op.

PGPKeyServerCleanup

```
PGPError            PGPKeyServerCleanup( void );
```

Arguments

Description

Terminates the underlying communications layer that the PGPsdk requires to access a key server (see `PGPKeyServerInit`). This function effectively destroys a communications session, and so `PGPKeyServerInit` must be called to initiate a new session prior to calling any other key server function.

Appendix A: PGPsdk Error Summary

Table A-1: Generic Errors

| Error Constants |
|----------------------------------|
| kPGPError_NoErr |
| kPGPError_AssertFailed |
| kPGPError_BadMemAddress |
| kPGPError_BadParams |
| kPGPError_BadPassphrase |
| kPGPError_BufferTooSmall |
| kPGPError_CantOpenFile |
| kPGPError_CorruptData |
| kPGPError_DiskFull |
| kPGPError_EndOfIteration |
| kPGPError_EOF |
| kPGPError_FeatureNotAvailable |
| kPGPError_FileLocked |
| kPGPError_FileNotFound |
| kPGPError_FileOpFailed |
| kPGPError_FilePermissions |
| kPGPError_IllegalFileOp |
| kPGPError ImproperInitialization |
| kPGPError_ItemAlreadyExists |
| kPGPError_ItemNotFound |
| kPGPError_LazyProgrammer |
| kPGPError_OptionNotFound |
| kPGPError_OutOfMemory |
| kPGPError_PrefNotFound |
| kPGPError_ReadFailed |
| kPGPError_UnknownError |
| kPGPError_UnknownRequest |
| kPGPError_UserAbort |
| kPGPError_WriteFailed |

Table A-2: Encode/Decode Errors

| Error Constants |
|---|
| kPGPError_CombinedConventionalAndPublicEncryption |
| kPGPError_CorruptSessionKey |
| kPGPError_DetachedSignatureFound |
| kPGPError_DetachedSignatureWithEncryption |
| kPGPError_DetachedSignatureWithoutSigningKey |
| kPGPError_IncompatibleAPI |
| kPGPError_InconsistentEncryptionAlgorithms |
| kPGPError_InputFile |
| kPGPError_Interrupted |
| kPGPError_KeyDisabled |
| kPGPError_KeyExpired |
| kPGPError_KeyRevoked |
| kPGPError_KeyInvalid |
| kPGPError_KeyUnusableForEncryption |
| kPGPError_KeyUnusableForSignature |
| kPGPError_MissingEventHandler |
| kPGPError_MissingKeySet |

| |
|---------------------------------|
| kPGPError_MissingPassphrase |
| kPGPError_MultipleInputOptions |
| kPGPError_MultipleOutputOptions |
| kPGPError_NoDecryptionKeyFound |
| kPGPError_NoInputOptions |
| kPGPError_NoOutputOptions |
| kPGPError_OutputBufferTooSmall |
| kPGPError_RedundantOptions |
| kPGPError_SkipSection |
| kPGPError_TooManyARRKs |

Table A-3: Macintosh MacBinary Format Errors

| Error Constants |
|---|
| kPGPError_NoMacBinaryTranslationAvailable |
| kPGPError_NotMacBinary |

Table A-4: KeySet Filter Errors

| Error Constants |
|-------------------------------------|
| kPGPError_InconsistentFilterClasses |
| kPGPError_InvalidFilterParameter |
| kPGPError_UnknownFilterType |
| kPGPError_UnsupportedHKPFilter |
| kPGPError_UnsupportedLDAPFilter |

Table A-5: Rarely Encountered PGP Errors***

| Error Constants |
|---|
| kPGPError_AsciiParseIncomplete |
| kPGPError_BadCipherNumber |
| kPGPError_BadHashNumber |
| kPGPError_BadKeyLength |
| kPGPError_BadPacket |
| kPGPError_BadSessionKeyAlgorithm |
| kPGPError_BadSessionKeySize |
| kPGPError_BadSignatureSize |
| kPGPError_CantDecrypt |
| kPGPError_CantHash |
| kPGPError_ConfigParseFailure |
| kPGPError_ConfigParseFailureBadFunction |
| kPGPError_ConfigParseFailureBadOptions |
| kPGPError_EnvPriorityTooLow |
| kPGPError_ExtraDateOnSignature |
| kPGPError_FIFOReadError |
| kPGPError_InvalidCommit |
| kPGPError_KeyIsLocked |
| kPGPError_OutOfRings |
| kPGPError_RandomSeedTooSmall |
| kPGPError_AdditionalRecipientRequestKeyNotFound |
| kPGPError_SecretKeyNotFound |
| kPGPError_SignatureBitsWrong |
| kPGPError_SizeAdviseFailure |
| kPGPError_TroubleBadTrust |
| kPGPError_TroubleBareKey |
| kPGPError_TroubleDuplicateKey |
| kPGPError_TroubleDuplicateKeyID |
| kPGPError_TroubleDuplicateName |

| |
|--|
| kPGPError_TroubleDuplicateSecretKey |
| kPGPError_TroubleDuplicateSignature |
| kPGPError_TroubleDuplicateUnknown |
| kPGPError_TroubleImportingNonexportableSignature |
| kPGPError_TroubleKeySubKey |
| kPGPError_TroubleKeyTooBig |
| kPGPError_TroubleNameTooBig |
| kPGPError_TroubleNewSecretKey |
| kPGPError_TroubleOldSecretKey |
| kPGPError_TroubleSecretKeyTooBig |
| kPGPError_TroubleSignatureTooBig |
| kPGPError_TroubleSigSubKey |
| kPGPError_TroubleUnexpectedName |
| kPGPError_TroubleUnexpectedSignature |
| kPGPError_TroubleUnexpectedSubKey |
| kPGPError_TroubleUnexpectedTrust |
| kPGPError_TroubleUnexpectedUnknown |
| kPGPError_TroubleUnknownPacketByte |
| kPGPError_TroubleUnknownTooBig |
| kPGPError_TroubleVersionBugCur |
| kPGPError_TroubleVersionBugPrev |
| kPGPError_UnbalancedScope |
| kPGPError_UnknownCharMap |
| kPGPError_UnknownSignatureType |
| kPGPError_UnknownString2Key |
| kPGPError_UnknownVersion |
| kPGPError_WrongScope |

*** These error codes should rarely be encountered, if ever. Most are indicative of internal PGPsdk errors, and not all are propagated to the PGPsdk level.

Table A-6: Key Errors

| Error Constants |
|-------------------------------------|
| kPGPError_KeyPacketTruncated |
| kPGPError_KeyTooLarge |
| kPGPError_MalformedKeyComponent |
| kPGPError_MalformedKeyExponent |
| kPGPError_MalformedKeyModulus |
| kPGPError_PublicKeyTooLarge |
| kPGPError_PublicKeyTooSmall |
| kPGPError_PublicKeyUnimplemented*** |
| kPGPError_RSAPublicExponentIsEven |
| kPGPError_RSAPublicModulusIsEven |
| kPGPError_UnknownKeyVersion |
| kPGPError_UnknownPublicKeyAlgorithm |

*** kPGPError_PublicKeyUnimplemented indicates that the active key was generated with an algorithm that is not implemented for that version of the PGPsdk. For example, passing an RSA key to any function of a Diffie-Hellman only version will result in this error.

Table A-7: Signature Errors

| Error Constants |
|-------------------------------------|
| kPGPError_ExtraSignatureMaterial |
| kPGPError_MalformedSignatureInteger |
| kPGPError_TruncatedSignature |
| kPGPError_UnknownSignatureAlgorithm |
| kPGPError_UnknownSignatureVersion |

Table A-8: KeyDB Errors

| Error Constants |
|-----------------------------|
| kPGPError_CertifyingKeyDead |
| kPGPError_DuplicateCert |
| kPGPError_DuplicateUserID |
| kPGPError_FileCorrupt |
| kPGPError_InvalidProperty |
| kPGPError_ItemIsReadOnly |
| kPGPError_ItemWasDeleted |
| kPGPError_KeydbMismatch |
| kPGPError_OutOfEntropy |

Table A-9: Key Server Errors

| Error Constants |
|--|
| kPGPError_ServerAddFailed |
| kPGPError_ServerAuthorizationFailed |
| kPGPError_ServerAuthorizationRequired |
| kPGPError_ServerBadKeysInSearchResults |
| kPGPError_ServerBindFailed |
| kPGPError_ServerConnectFailed |
| kPGPError_ServerCorruptKeyBlock |
| kPGPError_ServerInvalidProtocol |
| kPGPError_ServerKeyAlreadyExists |
| kPGPError_ServerKeyFailedPolicy |
| kPGPError_ServerOpenFailed |
| kPGPError_ServerOperationNotAllowed |
| kPGPError_ServerPartialAddFailure |
| kPGPError_ServerRequestFailed |
| kPGPError_ServerSearchFailed |
| kPGPError_ServerSocketError |
| kPGPError_ServerTooManyResults |
| kPGPError_ServerUnknownHost |
| kPGPError_ServerUnknownResponse |

Appendix B: References and Recommended Reading

Introductory Readings

- Bacard, Andre, *Computer Privacy Handbook*, Peachpit Press, 1995
- Garfinkel, Simson, *Pretty Good Privacy*, O'Reilly & Associates, 1995
- Schneier, Bruce, *Applied Cryptography: Protocols, Algorithms, and Source Code in C, Second Edition*, John Wiley & Sons, 1996
- Schneier, Bruce, *Email Security*, John Wiley & Sons, 1995
- Stallings, William, *Protect Your Privacy*, Prentice Hall, 1994

Other Readings

- Lai, Xuejia, *On the Design and Security of Block Ciphers*, Institute for Signal and Information Processing, ETH-Zentrum, Zurich, Switzerland, 1992
- Lai, Xuejia, James L. Massey, Sean Murphy, "Markov Ciphers and Differential Cryptanalysis," *Advances in Cryptology - EUROCRYPT'91*
- Rivest, Ronald, *The MD5 Message Digest Algorithm*, MIT Laboratory for Computer Science, 1991
- Wallich, Paul, "Electronic Envelopes," *Scientific American*, Feb. 1993, page 30.
- Zimmermann, Philip, "A Proposed Standard Format for RSA Cryptosystems," *Advances in Computer Security, Vol. III*, edited by Rein Turn, Artech House, 1988

Glossary

A5: a trade-secret cryptographic algorithm used in European cellular telephones.

Access control: a method of restricting access to resources, allowing only privileged entities access.

Additional recipient request key: a special key whose presence that indicates that all messages encrypted to its associated base key should also be automatically encrypted to it. Sometimes referred to by its marketing term, *additional decryption key*.

AES (Advanced Encryption Standard): NIST approved standards, usually used for the next 20 - 30 years.

AKEP (Authentication Key Exchange Protocol): key transport based on symmetric encryption allowing two parties to exchange a shared secret key, secure against passive adversaries.

Algorithm (encryption): a set of mathematical rules (logic) used in the processes of encryption and decryption.

Algorithm (hash): a set of mathematical rules (logic) used in the processes of message digest creation and key/signature generation.

Anonymity: of unknown or undeclared origin or authorship, concealing an entity's identification.

ANSI (American National Standards Instituted): develops standards through various Accredited Standards Committees (ASC). The X9 committee focuses on security standards for the financial services industry.

API (Application Programming Interface): provides the means to take advantage of software features, allowing dissimilar software products to interact upon one another.

ASN.1 (Abstract Syntax Notation One): ISO /IEC standard for encoding rules used in ANSI X.509 certificates, two types exist: DER (Distinguished Encoding Rules) and BER (Basic Encoding Rules).

Asymmetric keys: a separate but integrated user key-pair, comprised of one public-key and one private-key. Each key is one way, meaning that a key used to encrypt information can not be used to decrypt the same data.

Authentication: to prove genuine by corroboration of the identity of an entity.

Authorization certificate: an electronic document to prove one's access or privilege rights, also to prove one is who they say they are.

Authorization: to convey official sanction, access or legal power to an entity.

Blind signature: ability to sign documents without knowledge of content, similar to a notary public.

Block cipher: a symmetric cipher operating on blocks of plain text and cipher text, usually 64 bits.

Blowfish: a 64-bit block symmetric cipher consisting of key expansion and data encryption. A fast, simple, and compact algorithm in the public domain written by Bruce Schneier.

CA (Certificate Authority): a trusted third party (TTP) who creates certificates that consist of assertions on various attributes and binds them to an entity and/or to their public key.

CAPI (Crypto API): Microsoft's crypto API for Windows-based operating systems and applications.

Capstone: an NSA-developed cryptographic chip that implements a US government Key Escrow capability.

CAST: a 64-bit block cipher using 64-bit key, six S-boxes with 8-bit input and 32-bit output, developed in Canada by Carlisle Adams and Stafford Tavares.

CBC (Cipher Block Chaining): the process of having plain text XORed with the previous cipher text block before it is encrypted, thus adding a feedback mechanism to a block cipher.

CDK (Crypto Developer Kit): a documented environment, including an API for third parties to write secure applications using a specific vendor's cryptographic library.

CERT (Computer Emergency Response Team): security clearinghouse that promotes security awareness. CERT provides 24-hour technical assistance for computer and network security incidents. CERT is located at the Software Engineering Institute at Carnegie Mellon University in Pittsburgh, PA.

Certificate (digital certificate): an electronic document attached to a public key by a trusted third party, which provides proof that the public key belongs to a legitimate owner and has not been compromised.

- CFM (Cipher Feedback Mode):** a block cipher that has been implemented as a self-synchronizing stream cipher.
- CDSA (Common Data Security Architecture):** Intel Architecture Labs (IAL) developed this framework to address the data security problems inherent to Internet and Intranet for use in Intel and others' Internet products.
- Certification:** endorsement of information by a trusted entity.
- CHAP (Challenge Authentication Protocol):** a session-based, two-way password authentication scheme.
- Cipher text:** the result of manipulating either characters or bits via substitution, transposition, or both.
- Clear text:** characters in a human readable form or bits in a machine readable form (also called *plain text*)
- Confidentiality:** the act of keeping something private and secret from all but those who are authorized to see it.
- Cookie:** Persistent Client State HTTP Cookie - a file or token of sorts, that is passed from the web server to the web client (your browser) that is used to identify you and could record personal information such as ID and password, mailing address, credit card number, and other information.
- CRAB:** a 1024-byte block cipher (similar to MD5), using techniques from a one-way hash function, developed by Burt Kaliski and Matt Robshaw at RSA Laboratories.
- Credentials:** something that provides a basis for credit or confidence.
- CRL (Certificate Revocation List):** an online, up-to-date list of previously issued certificates that are no longer valid.
- Cross-certification:** two or more organizations or Certificate Authorities that share some level of trust.
- Cryptanalysis:** the art or science of transferring cipher text into plain text without initial knowledge of the key used to encrypt the plain text.
- CRYPTOKI:** same as PKCS #11.
- Cryptography:** the art and science of creating messages that have some combination of being private, signed, unmodified with nonrepudiation.
- Cryptosystem:** a system comprised of cryptographic algorithms, all possible plain text, cipher text, and keys.
- Data integrity:** a method of ensuring information has not been altered by unauthorized or unknown means.
- Decryption:** the process of turning cipher text back into plain text.
- DES (Data Encryption Standard):** a 64-bit block cipher, symmetric algorithm also known as Data Encryption Algorithm (DEA) by ANSI and DEA-1 by ISO. Widely used for over 20 years, adopted in 1976 as FIPS 46.
- Dictionary attack:** a calculated brute force attack to reveal a password by trying obvious and logical combinations of words.
- Diffie-Hellman:** the first public key algorithm, invented in 1976, using discrete logarithms in a finite field.
- Digital cash:** electronic money that stored and transferred through a variety of complex protocols.
- Direct trust:** an establishment of peer-to-peer confidence.
- Discrete logarithm:** the underlying mathematical problem used in/by asymmetric algorithms, like Diffie-Hellman and Elliptic Curve. It is the inverse problem of modular exponentiation, which is a one-way function.
- DMS (Defense Messaging System):** standards designed by the U.S. Department of Defense to provide a secure and reliable enterprise-wide messaging infrastructure for government and military agencies.
- DNSSEC (Domain Name System Security Working Group):** a proposed *IETF* draft that will specify enhancements to the DNS protocol to protect the DNS against unauthorized modification of data and against masquerading of data origin. It will add data integrity and authentication capabilities to the DNS via digital signatures.
- DSA (Digital Signature Algorithm):** a public-key digital signature algorithm proposed by NIST for use in DSS.

- Digital signature:** an electronic identification of a person or thing created by using a public-key algorithm. Intended to verify to a recipient the integrity of data and identity of the sender of the data.
- DSS (Digital Signature Standard):** a NIST proposed standard (FIPS) for digital signatures using DSA.
- ECC (Elliptic Curve Cryptosystem):** a unique method for creating public-key algorithms based on mathematical curves over finite fields or with large prime numbers.
- EDI (Electronic Data Interchange):** the direct, standardized computer-to-computer exchange of business documents (purchase orders, invoices, payments, inventory analyses, and others) between your organization and your suppliers and customers.
- EES (Escrowed Encryption Standard):** a proposed U.S. government standard for escrowing private keys.
- El Gamal scheme:** used for both digital signatures and encryption based on discrete logarithms in a finite field, can be used with the DSA function.
- Encryption:** the process of disguising a message in such a way as to hide its substance.
- Entropy:** a mathematical measurement of the amount of uncertainty or randomness.
- FEAL:** a block cipher using 64-bit block and 64-bit key, design by A.Shimizu and S.Miyaguchi at NTT Japan.
- Filter:** a function, set of functions, or combination of functions that applies some number of transforms to its input set, yielding an output set containing only those members of the input set that satisfy the transform criteria. The selected members may or may not be further transformed in the resultant output set. An example would be a search function that accepts multiple strings having a boolean relationship ((like a or like b) but not containing c) and optionally forces the case of the found strings in the resultant output.
- Fingerprint:** a unique identifier for a key that is obtained by hashing specific portions of the key data.
- FIPS (Federal Information Processing Standard):** a U.S. government standard published by NIST.
- Firewall:** a combination of hardware and software that protects the perimeter of the public/private network against certain attacks to ensure some degree of security.
- GAK (Government Access to Keys):** a method for the government to escrow individual's private key.
- Gost:** a 64-bit symmetric block cipher using a 256-bit key, developed in the former Soviet Union.
- GSS-API (Generic Security Services API):** IETF RFC 1508 is a high-level security API, which isolates session-oriented application code from implementation details.
- Hash function:** a one-way hash function - a function that produces a message digest that cannot be reversed to produced the original.
- Hierarchical trust:** a graded series of entities that distribute trust in an organized fashion, commonly used in ANSI X.509 issuing certifying authorities.
- HTTP (HyperText Transfer Protocol):** a common protocol used to transfer documents between servers or from a server to a client.
- IDEA (International Data Encryption Standard):** a 64-bit block symmetric cipher using 128-bit keys based on mixing operations from different algebraic groups. Considered one of the strongest algorithms.
- IETF (Internet Engineering Task Force):** a large open international community of network designers, operators, vendors, and researchers concerned with the evolution of the Internet architecture and the smooth operation of the Internet. It is open to any interested individual.
- Identity certificate:** a signed statement that binds a key to the name of an individual and has the intended meaning of delegating authority from that named individual to the public key.
- Initialization vector (IV):** a block of arbitrary data that serves as the starting point for a block cipher using a chaining feedback mode (see cipher block chaining).
- Integrity:** assurance that data is not modified (by unauthorized persons) during storage or transmittal.
- IPsec:** a TCP/IP layer encryption scheme under consideration within the IETF.
- ISA/KMP (Internet Security Association, Key Mgt. Protocol):** defines the procedures for authenticating a communicating peer, creation and management of Security Associations, key generation techniques, and threat mitigation (for example, denial of service and replay attacks).
- ISO (International Organization for Standardization):** responsible for a wide range of standards, like the OSI model and international relationship with ANSI on X.509.

- ITU-T (International Telecommunication Union-Telecommunication):** formally the CCITT (Consultative Committee for International Telegraph and Telephone), a worldwide telecommunications technology standards organization.
- Kerberos:** a trusted-third-party authentication protocol developed at MIT.
- Key:** a means of gaining or preventing access, possession, or control represented by any one of a large number of values.
- Key escrow/recovery:** a mechanism that allows a third party to retrieve the cryptographic keys used for data confidentiality, with the ultimate goal of recovery of encrypted data.
- Key exchange:** a scheme for two or more nodes to transfer a secret session key across an unsecured channel.
- Key length:** the number of bits representing the key size; the longer the key, the stronger it is.
- Key management:** the process and procedure for safely storing and distributing accurate cryptographic keys, the overall process of generating and distributing cryptographic key to authorized recipients in a secure manner.
- Key splitting:** a process for dividing portions of a single key between multiple parties, none having the ability to reconstruct the whole key.
- LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol):** a simple protocol that supports access and search operations on directories containing information such as names, phone numbers, and addresses across otherwise incompatible systems over the Internet.
- Lexical section:** a distinct portion of a message that contains a specific class of data, for example, clear-signed data, encrypted data, and key data.
- MAA (Message Authenticator Algorithm):** an ISO standard that produces a 32-bit hash, designed for IBM mainframes.
- MAC (Message Authentication Code):** a key-dependent one-way hash function, requiring the use of the identical key to verify the hash.
- MD2 (Message Digest 2):** 128-bit one-way hash function designed by Ron Rivest, dependent on a random permutation of bytes.
- MD4 (Message Digest 4):** 128-bit one-way hash function designed by Ron Rivest, using a simple set of bit manipulations on 32-bit operands.
- MD5 (Message Digest 5):** improved version of MD4, more complex but still a 128-bit one-way hash function.
- Message digest:** a number that is derived from a message. Change a single character in the message and the message will have a different message digest.
- MIC (Message Integrity Check):** originally defined in PEM for authentication using MD2 or MD5. Micalg (message integrity calculation) is used in secure MIME implementations.
- MIME (Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions):** a freely available set of specifications that offers a way to interchange text in languages with different character sets, and multi-media e-mail among many different computer systems that use Internet mail standards.
- MMB (Modular Multiplication-based Block):** based on IDEA, Joan Daemen developed this 128-bit key /128-bit block size symmetric algorithm, not used because of its susceptibility to linear cryptanalysis.
- MOSS (MIME Object Security Service):** defined in RFC 1848, it facilitates encryption and signature services for MIME, including key management based on asymmetric techniques (not widely used).
- MSP (Message Security Protocol):** the military equivalent of PEM, an X.400-compatible application level protocol for securing e-mail, developed by the NSA in late 1980.
- MTI:** a one-pass key agreement protocol by Matsumoto, Takashima, and Imai that provides mutual-key authentication without key confirmation or entity authentication.
- NAT (Network Address Translator):** RFC 1631, a router connecting two networks together; one designated as inside, is addressed with either private or obsolete addresses that need to be converted into legal addresses before packets are forwarded onto the other network (designated as outside).
- NIST (National Institute for Standards and Technology):** a division of the U.S. Dept. of Commerce that publishes open, interoperability standards called FIPS.
- Non-repudiation:** preventing the denial of previous commitments or actions.

- Oakely:** the "Oakley Session Key Exchange" provides a hybrid Diffie-Hellman session key exchange for use within the ISA/KMP framework. Oakley provides the important property of "Perfect Forward Secrecy."
- One-time pad:** a large nonrepeating set of truly random key letters used for encryption, considered the only perfect encryption scheme, invented by Major J. Mauborgne and G. Vernam in 1917.
- One-way hash:** a function of a variable string to create a fixed length value representing the original pre-image, also called message digest, fingerprint, message integrity check (MIC).
- Orange Book:** the National Computer Security Center book entitled *Department of Defense Trusted Computer Systems Evaluation Criteria* that defines security requirements.
- PAP (Password Authentication Protocol):** an authentication protocol that allows PPP peers to authenticate one another, does not prevent unauthorized access but merely identifies the remote end.
- Passphrase:** an easy-to-remember phrase used for better security than a single pass word, key crunching converts it into a random key.
- Password:** a sequence of characters or word that a subject submits to a system for purposes of authentication, validation, or verification.
- PCT (Private Communication Technology):** a protocol developed by Microsoft and Visa for secure communications on the Internet.
- PEM (Privacy Enhanced Mail):** a protocol to provide secure internet mail, (RFC 1421-1424) including services for encryption, authentication, message integrity, and key management. PEM uses ANSI X.509 certificates.
- Perfect forward secrecy:** a cryptosystem in which the cipher text yields no possible information about the plain text, except possibly the length.
- Primitive filter:** a function that applies a single transform to its input set, yielding an output set containing only those members of the input set that satisfy the transform criteria. An example would be a search function that accepts only a single string and outputs a list of line numbers where the string was found.
- Pretty Good Privacy (PGP):** an application & protocol (RFC 1991) for secure e-mail and file encryption developed by Phil R. Zimmermann. Originally published as Freeware, the source code has always been available for public scrutiny. PGP uses a variety of algorithms, like IDEA, RSA, DSA, MD5, SHA-1 for providing encryption, authentication, message integrity, and key management. PGP is based on the "Web-of-Trust" model and has worldwide deployment.
- PGP/MIME:** an IETF standard (RFC 2015) that provides privacy and authentication using the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) security content types described in RFC1847, currently deployed in PGP 5.0 and later versions.
- PKCS (Public Key Crypto Standards):** set of *de facto* standards for public key cryptography developed in cooperation with an informal consortium (Apple, DEC, Lotus, Microsoft, MIT, RSA, and Sun) that includes algorithm-specific and algorithm-independent implementation standards. Specifications defining message syntax and other protocols controlled by RSA Data Security Inc.
- PKI (Public Key Infrastructure):** a widely available and accessible certificate system for obtaining an entity's public-key with some degree of certainty that you have the "right" key and that it has not been revoked.
- Plain text (or clear text):** the human readable data or message before it is encrypted.
- Pseudo-random number:** a number that results from applying randomizing algorithms to input derived from the computing environment, for example, mouse coordinates. See *random number*.
- Private key:** the privately held "secret" component of an integrated asymmetric key pair, often referred to as the decryption key.
- Public key:** the publicly available component of an integrated asymmetric key pair often referred to as the encryption key.
- RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service):** an IETF protocol (developed by Livingston, Enterprise), for distributed security that secures remote access to networks and network services against unauthorized access. RADIUS consists of two pieces: authentication server code and client protocols.

- Random number:** an important aspect to many cryptosystems, and a necessary element in generating a unique key(s) that are unpredictable to an adversary. True random numbers are usually derived from analog sources, and usually involve the use of special hardware.
- RC2 (Rivest Cipher 2):** variable key size, 64-bit block symmetric cipher, a trade secret held by RSA, SDI.
- RC4 (Rivest Cipher 4):** variable key size stream cipher, once a proprietary algorithm of RSA Data Security, Inc.
- RC5 (Rivest Cipher 5):** a block cipher with a variety of arguments, block size, key size, and number of rounds.
- RIPE-MD:** an algorithm developed for the European Community's RIPE project, designed to resist known cryptanalysis attacks and produce a 128-bit hash value, a variation of MD4.
- REDOC:** a US-patented block cipher algorithm developed by M. Wood, using a 160-bit key and an 80-bit block.
- Revocation:** retraction of certification or authorization.
- RFC (Request for Comment):** an IETF document, either FYI (For Your Information) RFC sub-series that are overviews and introductory or STD RFC sub-series that identify specify Internet standards. Each RFC has an RFC number by which it is indexed and by which it can be retrieved. (www.ietf.org)
- ROT-13 (Rotation Cipher):** a simple substitution (Caesar) cipher, rotating each 26 letters 13 places.
- RSA:** short for RSA Data Security, Inc.; or referring to the principals: Ron Rivest, Adi Shamir, and Len Adleman; or to the algorithm they invented. The RSA algorithm is used in public-key cryptography and is based on the fact that it is easy to multiply two large prime numbers together, but hard to factor them out of the product.
- SAFER (Secure And Fast Encryption Routine):** a non-proprietary block cipher 64-bit key encryption algorithm. It is not patented, is available license free, and was developed by Massey, who also developed IDEA.
- Salt:** a random string that is concatenated with passwords (or random numbers) before being operated on by a one-way function. This concatenation effectively lengthens and obscures the password, making the cipher text less susceptible to dictionary attacks.
- SDSI (Simple Distributed Security Infrastructure):** a new *PKI* proposal from Ronald L. Rivest (MIT), and Butler Lampson (Microsoft). It provides a means of defining groups and issuing group-membership, access-control lists, and security policies. SDSI's design emphasizes linked local name spaces rather than a hierarchical global name space.
- SEAL (Software-optimized Encryption ALgorithm):** a fast stream cipher for 32-bit machines designed by Rogaway and Coppersmith.
- Secret key:** either the "private-key" in public-key (asymmetric) algorithms or the "session-key" in symmetric algorithms.
- Secure channel:** a means of conveying information from one entity to another such that an adversary does not have the ability to reorder, delete, insert, or read (SSL, IPsec, whispering in someone's ear).
- Self-signed key:** a public-key that has been signed by the corresponding private-key for proof of ownership.
- SEPP (Secure Electronic Payment Protocol):** an open specification for secure bankcard transactions over the Internet. Developed by IBM, Netscape, GTE, Cybercash, and MasterCard.
- SESAME (Secure European System for Applications in a Multi-vendor environment):** European research and development project that extended Kerberos by adding authorization and access services.
- Session key:** the secret (symmetric) key used to encrypt each set of data on a transaction basis. A different session key is used for each communication session.
- SET (Secure Electronic Transaction):** provides for secure exchange of credit card numbers over the Internet.
- SHA-1 (Secure Hash Algorithm):** the 1994 revision to SHA, developed by NIST, (FIPS 180-1) used with DSS produces a 160-bit hash, similar to MD4, which is very popular and is widely implemented.
- Single sign-on:** one log-on provides access to all resources of the network.

- SKIP (Simple Key for IP):** simple key-management for Internet protocols, developed by Sun Microsystems, Inc.
- Skipjack:** the 80-bit key encryption algorithm contained in NSA's Clipper chip. The algorithm is classified; NSA will not release information on how it works.
- SKMP (Secure-Key Management Protocol):** an IBM proposed key-recovery architecture that uses a key encapsulation technique to provide the key and message recovery to a trusted third-party escrow agent.
- S/MIME (Secure Multipurpose Mail Extension):** a proposed standard developed by Deming software and RSA Data Security for encrypting and/or authenticating MIME data. S/MIME defines a format for the MIME data, the algorithms that must be used for interoperability (RSA, RC2, SHA-1), and the additional operational concerns such as ANSI X.509 certificates and transport over the Internet.
- SNAPI (Secure Network API):** a Netscape driven API for security services that provide ways for resources to be protected against unauthorized users, for communication to be encrypted and authenticated, and for the integrity of information to be verified.
- SPKI (Simple Public Key Infrastructure):** an IETF proposed draft standard, (by Ellison, Frantz, and Thomas) public key certificate format, associated signature and other formats, and key acquisition protocol. Recently merged with Ron Rivest's SDSI proposal.
- SSH (Secure Shell):** an IETF proposed protocol for securing the transport layer by providing encryption, cryptographic host authentication, and integrity protection.
- SSH (Site Security Handbook):** the Working Group (WG) of the Internet Engineering Task Force has been working since 1994 to produce a pair of documents designed to educate the Internet community in the area of security. The first document is a complete reworking of RFC 1244, and is targeted at system and network administrators, as well as decision makers (middle management).
- SSL (Secure Socket Layer):** developed by Netscape to provide security and privacy over the Internet. Supports server and client authentication and maintains the security and integrity of the transmission channel. Operates at the transport layer and mimics the "sockets library," allowing it to be application independent. Encrypts the entire communication channel and does not support digital signatures at the message level.
- SST (Secure Transaction Technology):** a secure payment protocol developed by Microsoft and Visa as a companion to the PCT protocol.
- Stream cipher:** a class of symmetric-key encryption where transformation can be changed for each symbol of plain text being encrypted, useful for equipment with little memory to buffer data.
- STU-III (Secure Telephone Unit):** NSA designed telephone for secure voice and low-speed data communications for use by the U.S. Dept. of Defense and their contractors.
- Substitution cipher:** the characters of the plain text are substituted with other characters to form the cipher text.
- S/WAN (Secure Wide Area Network):** RSA Data Security, Inc. driven specifications for implementing IPsec to ensure interoperability among firewall and TCP/IP products. S/WAN's goal is to use IPsec to allow companies to mix-and-match firewall and TCP/IP stack products to build Internet-based Virtual Private Networks (VPNs).
- Symmetric algorithm:** a.k.a., conventional, secret-key, single-key algorithms; the encryption and decryption key are either the same or can be calculated from one another. Two sub-categories exist: Block and Stream.
- TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access Control System):** a protocol that provides remote access authentication, authorization, and related accounting and logging services, used by Cisco Systems.
- Timestamping:** recording the time of creation or existence of information.
- TLS (Transport Layer Security):** an IETF draft, version 1 is based on the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) version 3.0 protocol, and provides communications privacy over the Internet.
- TLSP (Transport Layer Security Protocol):** ISO 10736, draft international standard.
- Transposition cipher:** the plain text remains the same but the order of the characters is transposed.
- Triple DES:** an encryption configuration in which the DES algorithm is used three times with three different keys.

Trust: a firm belief or confidence in the honesty, integrity, justice, and/or reliability of a person, company, or other entity.

TTP (Trust Third-Party): a responsible party in which all participants involved agree upon in advance, to provide a service or function, such as certification, by binding a public-key to an entity, time-stamping, or key-escrow.

UEPS (Universal Electronic Payment System): a smart-card (secure debit-card) -based banking application developed for South Africa where poor telephones make on-line verification impossible.

Validation: a means to provide timeliness of authorization to use or manipulate information or resources.

Verification: to authenticate, confirm, or establish accuracy.

VPN (Virtual Private Network): allows private networks to span from the end-user, across a public network (Internet) directly to the Home Gateway of choice, such as your company's Intranet.

WAKE (Word Auto Key Encryption): produces a stream of 32-bit words, which can be XORed with plain text stream to produce cipher text, invented by David Wheeler.

Web of Trust: a distributed trust model used by PGP to validate the ownership of a public key where the level of trust is cumulative based on the individual's knowledge of the "introducers."

W3C (World Wide Web Consortium): an international industry consortium founded in 1994 to develop common protocols for the evolution of the World Wide Web.

XOR: exclusive-or operation, a mathematical way to represent differences.

X.509v3: an ITU-T digital certificate that is an internationally recognized electronic document used to prove identity and public key ownership over a communication network. It contains the issuer's name, the user's identifying information, and the issuer's digital signature, as well as other possible extensions in version 3.

X9.17: an ANSI specification that details the methodology for generating random and pseudo-random numbers.

Index

A

A5 · 219
Access control · 219
AES (Advanced Encryption Standard) · 219
AKEP (Authentication Key Exchange Protocol) · 219
Algorithm · ii, 106, 217, 219, 220, 222, 224
Algorithm (encryption) · 219
Algorithm (hash) · 219
Anonymity · 219
ANSI (American National Standards Instituted) · 171, 219, 220, 221, 223, 225, 226
ANSI X9.17 · 171, 226
API (Application Programming Interface) · xix, xx, 25, 29, 31, 32, 176, 177, 196, 219, 221, 225
ASN.1 (Abstract Syntax Notation One) · 219
Asymmetric keys · 219
Authentication · 23, 24, 32, 105, 107, 143, 219, 220, 222, 223
Authorization · 219
Authorization certificate · 219

B

Blind signature · 219
Block cipher · 219

C

CA (Certificate Authority) · ii, 219
Callback · 32, 39, 108, 200
CAPI (Crypto API) · 219
Capstone · 219
CAST · ii, 219
CBC (Cipher Block Chaining) · 126, 128, 129, 130, 131, 219
CDK (Crypto Developer Kit) · 219
CDSA (Common Data Security Architecture) · 220
CERT (Computer Emergency Response Team) · 219
Certificate (digital certificate) · 219, 220
Certification · 219, 220
CFM (Cipher Feedback Mode) · 220
CHAP (Challenge Authentication Protocol) · 220
Cipher text · 220
Clear text · 220
Confidentiality · 220
Cookie · 220
CRAB · 220
Credentials · 220
CRL (Certificate Revocation List) · 220
Cross-certification · 220
Cryptanalysis · 217, 220
Cryptography · xix, xxi, 217, 220
CRYPTOKI · 220
Cryptosystem · 220, 221

D

Decryption · 220
DES (Data Encryption Standard) · 220, 225
Dictionary attack · 220
Diffie-Hellman · 33, 86, 106, 215, 220, 223
Digital cash · 220
Digital signature · 221
Direct trust · 220
Discrete logarithm · 220
DMS (Defense Messaging System) · 220
DNSSEC (Domain Name System Security Working Group) · 220
DSA (Digital Signature Algorithm) · 106, 220, 221, 223
DSS (Digital Signature Standard) · 32, 157, 220, 221, 224

E

ECC (Elliptic Curve Cryptosystem) · 221
EDI (Electronic Data Interchange) · 221
EES (Escrowed Encryption Standard) · 221
El Gamal scheme · 221
Encryption · ii, 219, 220, 221, 224, 226
Entropy · 172, 221, 223
Event · 32, 39, 40, 50, 105, 108, 109, 110, 112, 200, 201

F

FEAL · 221
Filter · 30, 200, 214, 221
FIPS (Federal Information Processing Standard) · 220, 221, 222, 224
Firewall · 221

G

GAK (Government Access to Keys) · 221
Gost · 221
GSS-API (Generic Security Services API) · 221

H

Hash function · 221
Hierarchical trust · 221
HTTP (HyperText Transfer Protocol) · 24, 62, 63, 199, 200, 204, 205, 206, 208, 210, 211, 212, 220, 221

I

IDEA (International Data Encryption Standard) · ii, 106, 169, 221, 222, 223, 224
Identity certificate · 221
IETF (Internet Engineering Task Force) · 220, 221, 223, 224, 225
Initialization vector (IV) · 221
Integrity · 221, 222
ISA/KMP (Internet Security Association, Key Mgt. Protocol) · 221, 223
ISO (International Organization for Standardization) · 219, 220, 221, 222, 225
ITU-T (International Telecommunication Union-Telecommunication) · 222, 226

K

Kerberos · 222
Key · ii, xx, 23, 24, 29, 30, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 42, 63, 72, 73, 84, 94, 95, 102, 105, 106, 107, 161, 199, 200, 201, 204, 207, 215, 216, 219, 221, 222, 223, 225, 226
Key escrow/recovery · 222
Key exchange · 222
Key length · 222
Key management · 23, 24, 222
Key set · 30
Key splitting · 222
kPGPEvent_AnalyzeEvent · 39, 105, 108, 113, 201
kPGPEvent_BeginLexEvent · 106, 112
kPGPEvent_DetachedSigEvent · 115
kPGPEvent_EndLexEvent · 106, 117
kPGPEvent_EntropyEvent · 105, 112
kPGPEvent_ErrorEvent · 105, 108, 111
kPGPEvent_FinalEvent · 41, 105, 112, 203
kPGPEvent_InitialEvent · 40, 105, 110, 201
kPGPEvent_KeyFoundEvent · 105, 114, 116
kPGPEvent_KeyGenEvent · 41, 106
kPGPEvent_KeyServerEvent · 106, 202
kPGPEvent_KeyServerSignEvent · 106, 202
kPGPEvent_NullEvent · 40, 50, 105, 110, 111, 202
kPGPEvent_OutputEvent · 105, 116
kPGPEvent_PassphraseEvent · 105, 115
kPGPEvent_RecipientsEvent · 105, 113
kPGPEvent_SignatureEvent · 106, 114
kPGPEvent_WarningEvent · 105, 111

L

LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) · ii, 24, 62, 199, 200, 204, 205, 206, 208, 210, 211, 212, 222

M

MAA (Message Authenticator Algorithm) · 222
MAC (Message Authentication Code) · 222
MacBinary · 153, 183, 214
MacOS platforms · xxi, 115, 116, 147, 150, 180, 182, 183, 184, 189
MD2 (Message Digest 2) · 222
MD4 (Message Digest 4) · 222, 224
MD5 (Message Digest 5) · 106, 217, 220, 222, 223
Message digest · 222
MIC (Message Integrity Check) · 222, 223
MIME (Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions) · 152, 222, 223, 225
MMB (Modular Multiplication-based Block) · 222
MOSS (MIME Object Security Service) · 222
MSP (Message Security Protocol) · 222
MTI · 222

N

NAT (Network Address Translator) · 222
NIST (National Institute for Standards and Technology) · 219, 220, 221, 222, 224
Non-repudiation · 222

O

Oakely · 223
 One-time pad · 223
 One-way hash · 223
 Orange Book · 223

P

PAP (Password Authentication Protocol) · 223
 Passphrase · 223
 Password · 223
 PCT (Private Communication Technology) · 223, 225
 PEM (Privacy Enhanced Mail) · 222, 223
 Perfect forward secrecy · 223
 PGP/MIME · 223
 PGPAAddJobOptions · 32, 39, 108, 109, 115, 146, 201, 202
 PGPAAddKeys · 48, 114
 PGPAAddUserID · 37, 79, 107
 PGPAAppendOptionList · 144, 145, 146, 161
 PGPBBuildOptionList · 27, 143, 144, 145, 146, 161
 PGPCBCDecrypt · 130
 PGPCBCEncrypt · 129
 PGPCBCGetSymmetricCipher · 129, 130
 PGPCFBDecrypt · 135
 PGPCFBEncrypt · 134
 PGPCFBGetRandom · 135
 PGPCFBGetSymmetricCipher · 135
 PGPCFBRandomCycle · 136
 PGPCFBRandomWash · 136
 PGPCFBSync · 137
 PGPCChangePassphrase · 73
 PGPCChangeSubKeyPassphrase · 74, 78
 PGPCCheckKeyRingSigs · 40, 49
 PGPCCommitKeyRingChanges · 51
 PGPCCompareKeyIDs · 101
 PGPCCompareKeys · 77
 PGPCCompareUserIDStrings · 80
 PGPCContextGetRandomBytes · 178
 PGPCContinueHash · 120
 PGPCCopyCBCContext · 128
 PGPCCopyCFBContext · 133
 PGPCCopyFileSpec · 181
 PGPCopyHashContext · 119, 121
 PGPCopyKeyIter · 63
 PGPCopyOptionList · 144, 145
 PGPCopySymmetricCipherContext · 123
 PGPCountAdditionalRecipientRequests · 82, 84
 PGPCountKeys · 48
 PGPCountPublicKeyAlgorithms · 193, 194
 PGPCountSymmetricCiphers · 194, 195
 PGPPDecode · 31, 32, 36, 37, 107, 109, 110, 113, 114, 115, 116, 118, 146, 149, 153, 154, 161, 201, 202, 203
 PGPPDeleteFromKeyServer · 210
 PGPPDisableFromKeyServer · 211
 PGPPDisableKey · 74
 PGPPEnableKey · 74
 PGPPEncode · 31, 32, 38, 40, 41, 107, 109, 110, 117, 146, 154, 155, 156, 161, 201
 PGPPExportKeyID · 98
 PGPPExportKeySet · 40, 41, 47, 107
 PGPPFilterKeySet · 30, 61

PGPFinalizeHash · 121
PGPFreeCBCContext · 128
PGPFreeCFBContext · 134
PGPFreeContext · 27, 28, 177
PGPFreeData · 62, 149, 179, 180, 182, 186, 212
PGPFreeFileSpec · 181, 182, 187
PGPFreeFilter · 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61
PGPFreeHashContext · 119
PGPFreeKeyIter · 63
PGPFreeKeyList · 52
PGPFreeKeyServer · 207
PGPFreeKeySet · 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 209, 210, 211, 212
PGPFreeOptionList · 144, 145
PGPFreePrivateKeyContext · 140
PGPFreePublicKeyContext · 137
PGPFreeSymmetricCipherContext · 122, 123
PGPGenerateKey · 36, 41, 73, 162, 165
PGPGenerateSubKey · 36, 41, 77, 163
PGPGetContextUserValue · 178
PGPGetDefaultPrivateKey · 94
PGPGetErrorString · 189
PGPGetFeatureFlags · 42, 43, 191, 192
PGPGetFSSpecFromFileSpec · 182
PGPGetFullPathFromFileSpec · 182
PGPGetHashAlgUsed · 85
PGPGetHashSize · 120, 121
PGPGetIndexedAdditionalRecipientRequest · 83, 84, 101
PGPGetIndexedAdditionalRecipientRequestKeyID · 101
PGPGetIndexedPublicKeyAlgorithmInfo · 193, 194
PGPGetIndexedSymmetricCipherInfo · 195
PGPGetKeyBoolean · 36, 86
PGPGetKeyByKeyID · 99, 100
PGPGetKeyContext · 103
PGPGetKeyEntropyNeeded · 36, 84
PGPGetKeyIDFromKey · 100
PGPGetKeyIDFromString · 99
PGPGetKeyIDFromSubKey · 100
PGPGetKeyIDOfCertifier · 100
PGPGetKeyIDString · 98
PGPGetKeyIterContext · 102
PGPGetKeyListContext · 102
PGPGetKeyNumber · 86, 87
PGPGetKeyPropertyBuffer · 87
PGPGetKeyServerErrorString · 212
PGPGetKeySetContext · 102
PGPGetKeyTime · 88
PGPGetKeyUserVal · 96
PGPGetPGPTimeFromStdTime · 187
PGPGetPrimaryUserID · 92
PGPGetPrimaryUserIDNameBuffer · 93
PGPGetPrimaryUserIDValidity · 93
PGPGetPrivateKeyOperationsSizes · 140
PGPGetPublicKeyOperationsSizes · 138
PGPGetSDKString · 167, 196, 197
PGPGetSDKVersion · 196
PGPGetSigBoolean · 91
PGPGetSigCertifierKey · 36, 85
PGPGetSigNumber · 91, 100
PGPGetSigTime · 92
PGPGetSigUserVal · 97
PGPGetStdTimeFromPGPTime · 187
PGPGetSubKeyBoolean · 88

PGPGetSubKeyNumber · 88
PGPGetSubKeyPropertyBuffer · 89
PGPGetSubKeyTime · 89
PGPGetSubKeyUserVal · 96
PGPGetSymmetricCipherSizes · 122, 124
PGPGetTime · 187, 188, 189
PGPGetUserIDContext · 103
PGPGetUserIDNumber · 90
PGPGetUserIDStringBuffer · 90
PGPGetUserIDUserVal · 97
PGPGetYMDFromPGPTime · 188
PGPGlobalRandomPoolAddKeystroke · 112, 171
PGPGlobalRandomPoolAddMouse · 172
PGPGlobalRandomPoolGetEntropy · 172, 173
PGPGlobalRandomPoolGetMinimumEntropy · 172, 173
PGPGlobalRandomPoolGetSize · 173
PGPGlobalRandomPoolHasMinimumEntropy · 112, 172
PGPHKSQueryFromFilter · 62
PGPImportKeyID · 97
PGPImportKeySet · 40, 41, 46, 107
PGPIncFilterRefCount · 72
PGPIncKeyListRefCount · 72
PGPIncKeySetRefCount · 72
PGPInitCBC · 127, 128
PGPInitCFB · 133
PGPInitSymmetricCipher · 122, 126, 127, 132
PGPIntersectFilters · 60, 200
PGPKeyIterIndex · 64
PGPKeyIterKey · 64
PGPKeyIterMove · 66, 67, 69
PGPKeyIterNext · 67, 71
PGPKeyIterNextSubKey · 67, 71
PGPKeyIterNextUIDSig · 68, 71
PGPKeyIterNextUserID · 68, 71
PGPKeyIterPrev · 69
PGPKeyIterPrevSubKey · 69
PGPKeyIterPrevUIDSig · 70
PGPKeyIterPrevUserID · 70
PGPKeyIterRewind · 71
PGPKeyIterRewindSubKey · 71
PGPKeyIterRewindUIDSig · 71
PGPKeyIterRewindUserID · 71
PGPKeyIterSeek · 66
PGPKeyIterSig · 65
PGPKeyIterSubKey · 64
PGPKeyIterUserID · 65
PGPKeyServerCleanup · 212
PGPKeyServerClose · 207, 208, 212
PGPKeyServerInit · 204, 212
PGPKeyServerOpen · 207, 212
PGPKeySetIsMember · 48
PGPKeySetIsMutable · 48
PGPKeySetNeedsCommit · 51
PGPLDAPFreeServerMonitor · 206, 207, 209, 210, 211, 212
PGPLDAPNewServerMonitor · 205, 206
PGPLDAPQueryFromFilter · 62
PGPMacBinaryToLocal · 183
PGPNegateFilter · 60, 200
PGPNewCBCContext · 125, 127, 130, 132
PGPNewCFBContext · 131
PGPNewContext · 27, 28, 176, 178
PGPNewContextCustom · 27, 28, 176, 178

PGPNewData · 179, 180
PGPNewEmptyKeySet · 44
PGPNewFileSpecFromFSSpec · 180
PGPNewFileSpecFromFullPath · 181
PGPNewHashContext · 118
PGPNewKeyCreationTimeFilter · 53, 189, 200
PGPNewKeyDisabledFilter · 53, 200
PGPNewKeyEncryptAlgorithmFilter · 54, 200
PGPNewKeyEncryptKeySizeFilter · 54, 200
PGPNewKeyExpirationTimeFilter · 55, 200
PGPNewKeyFingerPrintFilter · 55, 200
PGPNewKeyIDFilter · 59, 200
PGPNewKeyIter · 63
PGPNewKeyRevokedFilter · 55, 200
PGPNewKeyServerFromURL · 204
PGPNewKeySet · 44
PGPNewKeySigAlgorithmFilter · 58, 200
PGPNewKeySigKeySizeFilter · 58, 200
PGPNewOptionList · 144, 145
PGPNewPrivateKeyContext · 139
PGPNewPublicKeyContext · 137
PGPNewSecureData · 179, 180
PGPNewSigKeyIDFilter · 59, 200
PGPNewSingletonKeySet · 45
PGPNewSubKeyIDFilter · 56, 200
PGPNewSymmetricCipherContext · 121, 126, 132
PGPNewUserIDEmailFilter · 56, 200
PGPNewUserIDNameFilter · 57, 200
PGPNewUserIDStringFilter · 57, 200
PGPOAdditionalRecipientRequestKeySet · 36, 37, 38, 107, 161
PGPOAllocatedOutputBuffer · 36, 37, 38, 47, 107, 116, 148, 149
PGPOAppendOutput · 36, 37, 38, 107, 116, 151
PGPOArmorOutput · 36, 37, 38, 107, 152, 154, 160
PGPOAskUserForEntropy · 36, 37, 38, 107, 158
PGPOCipherAlgorithm · 36, 37, 38, 107, 155
PGPOClearSign · 36, 37, 38, 107, 160
PGPOCommentString · 36, 37, 38, 107, 166
PGPOCompression · 36, 37, 38, 107, 166
PGPOConventionalEncrypt · 36, 37, 38, 107, 154, 167, 168
PGPODataIsASCII · 36, 37, 38, 107, 159, 160
PGPODetachedSig · 32, 36, 37, 38, 108, 115, 154
PGPODiscardOutput · 36, 37, 38, 108, 116, 148, 150, 151
PGPOEncryptToKey · 36, 37, 38, 108, 155, 166
PGPOEncryptToKeySet · 36, 37, 38, 108, 156, 166
PGPOEncryptToUserID · 36, 37, 38, 108, 156, 166
PGPOEventHandler · 32, 36, 37, 38, 39, 108, 157, 170
PGPOExpiration · 36, 37, 38, 81, 108, 164
PGPOExportable · 36, 37, 38, 47, 81, 108, 164
PGPOExportPrivateKeys · 36, 37, 38, 108, 163
PGPOFailBelowValidity · 36, 37, 38, 108, 114, 158
PGPOForYourEyesOnly · 36, 37, 38, 108, 116, 159
PGPOHashAlgorithm · 32, 36, 37, 38, 108, 156
PGPOImportKeysTo · 36, 37, 38, 108, 114, 160
PGPOInputBuffer · 36, 37, 38, 47, 108, 115, 146, 147, 148, 154
PGPOInputFile · 36, 37, 38, 47, 108, 115, 147, 148, 149, 154
PGPOInputFileFSSpec · 36, 37, 38, 47, 108, 147, 148, 154
PGPOKeyGenFast · 36, 37, 38, 108, 163
PGPOKeyGenMasterKey · 36, 37, 38, 108, 162
PGPOKeyGenName · 36, 37, 38, 108, 162
PGPOKeyGenParams · 36, 37, 38, 108, 163
PGPOKeySetRef · 36, 37, 38, 73, 78, 108, 113, 169

PGPOLastOption · 32, 36, 37, 38, 47, 73, 74, 75, 77, 78, 79, 81, 82, 84, 108, 117, 118, 144, 145, 146, 149, 154, 155, 157, 166, 170, 203

PGPOLocalEncoding · 36, 37, 38, 108, 152, 153

PGPONullOption · 36, 37, 38, 108, 165, 166

PGPOOmitMIMEVersion · 37, 38, 108, 152

PGPOOutputBuffer · 37, 38, 47, 108, 116, 148, 149, 150, 151

PGPOOutputFile · 37, 38, 47, 108, 116, 148, 150, 151

PGPOOutputFileFSSpec · 37, 38, 47, 108, 148, 150, 151

PGPOOutputLineEndType · 37, 38, 108, 153

PGPOPassphrase · 27, 37, 38, 75, 81, 108, 115, 116, 143, 149, 155, 157, 167, 168, 202, 203

PGPOPassphraseBuffer · 37, 38, 75, 81, 108, 112, 115, 116, 168, 202, 203

PGPOPassThroughIfUnrecognized · 37, 38, 108, 161

PGPOpenDefaultKeyRings · 42, 43, 113

PGPOpenKeyRing · 34, 43, 113

PGPOpenKeyRingPair · 42, 43, 113

PGPOPGPMIMEEncoding · 37, 38, 108, 151, 152

PGPOPreferredAlgorithms · 37, 38, 108, 168, 169

PGPORawPGPInput · 37, 38, 108, 159

PGPOrderKeySet · 30, 52

PGPOSendEventIfKeyFound · 37, 38, 108, 114, 161

PGPOSendNullEvents · 37, 38, 40, 47, 108, 110, 169

PGPOSignWithKey · 27, 32, 37, 38, 108, 143, 157

PGPOSigRegularExpression · 37, 38, 81, 108, 164

PGPOSigTrust · 37, 38, 81, 108, 165

PGPOVersionString · 37, 38, 108, 167

PGPOWarnBelowValidity · 37, 38, 108, 114, 115, 157

PGPPassphraseIsValid · 85

PGPPrivateKeyDecrypt · 141

PGPPrivateKeySign · 141

PGPPropagateTrust · 50

PGPPublicKeyEncrypt · 138

PGPPublicKeyVerifySignature · 139

PGPQueryKeyServer · 200, 208

PGPReloadKeyRings · 46

PGPRemoveKeys · 49

PGPRemoveSig · 81

PGPRemoveSubKey · 78

PGPRemoveUserID · 79

PGPResetHash · 121

PGPRevertKeyRingChanges · 52

PGPRevokeKey · 38, 74, 75

PGPRevokeSig · 38, 82

PGPRevokeSubKey · 38, 78

PGPsdkCleanup · 184

PGPsdkInit · 183, 184

PGPsdkLoadDefaultPrefs · 184

PGPsdkLoadPrefs · 184

PGPsdkPrefGetData · 186

PGPsdkPrefGetFileSpec · 42, 186

PGPsdkPrefSetData · 185

PGPsdkPrefSetFileSpec · 186

PGPsdkSavePrefs · 185, 186

PGPSetContextUserValue · 178

PGPSetDefaultPrivateKey · 94

PGPSetKeyAxiomatic · 75, 76

PGPSetKeyTrust · 76

PGPSetKeyUserVal · 95

PGPSetPrimaryUserID · 80

PGPSetSigUserVal · 95

PGPSetUserIDUserVal · 96

PGPSignUserID · 37, 80, 81, 164, 165

PGPSymmetricCipherDecrypt · 124

PGPSymmetricCipherEncrypt · 124
PGPTimeFromMacTime · 189
PGPTimeToMacTime · 189
PGPUnionFilters · 61, 200
PGPUnionKeySets · 45
PGPUnsetKeyAxiomatic · 76
PGPUUploadToKeyServer · 40, 209
PGPWashSymmetricCipher · 125
PGPWipeSymmetricCipher · 125
PKCS (Public Key Crypto Standards) · 220, 223
PKI (Public Key Infrastructure) · 223, 224
Plain text (or clear text) · 223
Pretty Good Privacy (PGP) · ii, iii, xix, 196, 217, 223
Private key · 223
Public key · 223

R

RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) · 223
Random number · 171, 223, 224
RC2 (Rivest Cipher 2) · 224, 225
RC4 (Rivest Cipher 4) · 224
RC5 (Rivest Cipher 5) · 224
REDOC · 224
Revocation · 38, 220, 224
RFC (Request for Comment) · 221, 222, 223, 224, 225
RIPE-MD · 224
ROT-13 (Rotation Cipher) · 224
RSA · 32, 33, 86, 106, 157, 215, 217, 220, 223, 224, 225

S

S/MIME (Secure Multipurpose Mail Extension) · 225
S/WAN (Secure Wide Area Network) · 225
SAFER (Secure And Fast Encryption Routine) · 224
Salt · 224
Schneier, Bruce · xix, xxi, 217, 219
SDSI (Simple Distributed Security Infrastructure) · 224, 225
SEAL (Software-optimized Encryption ALgorithm) · 224
Secret key · 224
Secure channel · 224
Self-signed key · 224
SEPP (Secure Electronic Payment Protocol) · 224
SESAME (Secure European System for Applications in a Multi-vendor environment) · 224
Session key · 224
SET (Secure Electronic Transaction) · iii, 224
SHA-1 (Secure Hash Algorithm) · 32, 157, 171, 223, 224, 225
Single sign-on · 224
SKIP (Simple Key for IP) · 225
Skipjack · 225
SKMP (Secure-Key Management Protocol) · 225
SNAPI (Secure Network API) · 225
SPKI (Simple Public Key Infrastructure) · 225
SSH (Secure Shell) · 225
SSH (Site Security Handbook) · 225
SSL (Secure Socket Layer) · 224, 225
SST (Secure Transaction Technology) · 225
Stream cipher · 225
STU-III (Secure Telephone Unit) · 225

Substitution cipher · 225
Symmetric algorithm · 225

T

TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access Control System) · 225
Timestamping · 225
TLS (Transport Layer Security) · 225
TLSP (Transport Layer Security Protocol) · 225
Transposition cipher · 225
Triple DES · 225
Trust · 23, 107, 226
TTP (Trust Third-Party) · 219, 226

U

UEPS (Universal Electronic Payment System) · 226
Unix platforms · xx

V

Validation · 226
Verification · 226
VPN (Virtual Private Network) · 226

W

W3C (World Wide Web Consortium) · 226
WAKE (Word Auto Key Encryption) · 226
Web of Trust · 23, 226
Windows platforms · xx
www.ietf.org · 224

X

X.509v3 · 226
XOR · 226

Z

Zimmermann, Phillip · xxi, 30, 217, 223